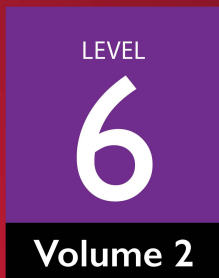




KoreanClass101.com



Korean

Lower Intermediate



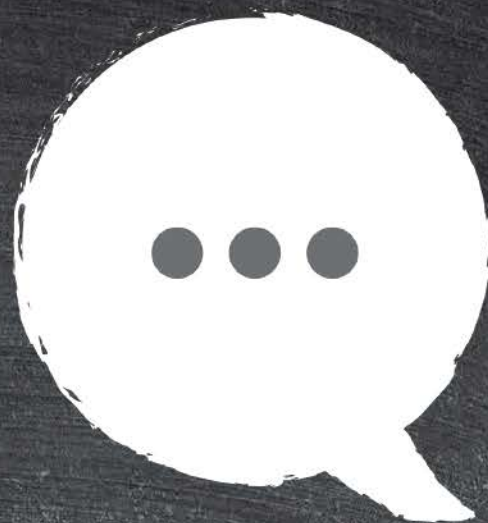
Unabridged Edition

innovative LANGUAGE

If you love the **Korean** language, then you'll love this!

Get our Complete **Korean** Learning Program
at **KoreanClass101.com**.

- Speak **Korean** From Your First Lesson
- Access hundreds of Audio & Video Courses
by Real Teachers
- Get **FREE** New Lessons Every Week
- Learn Anywhere, Anytime on Any Android
Device or Computer



Go to
KoreanClass101.com
and sign up for your

FREE

Lifetime Account!



KoreanClass101.com

LESSON NOTES

Lower Intermediate S2 #1

I Didn't Expect That to Happen in Korea!

CONTENTS

- 2 Korean Hangul
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 8 Grammar
- 11 Cultural Insight

#1

KOREAN HANGUL

1. (식당에서 동창회 모임)
2. 철수: 여기야! 수진아.
3. 수진: 야. 반갑다. 친구야!
4. 철수: 반갑다. 근데 팀한테 전화 받았어?
5. 수진: 전화? 전화 안 받았는데.
6. 철수: 그럴 리가 없는데...
7. 수진: 왜? 팀한테 무슨 일이 있는 거야?
8. 철수: 팀이 아직 안 왔거든.
9. 수진: 어? 정말!? 팀이 안 올 리가 없어! 이 자리 본인이 부탁해서 마련한 자리니까
10. 철수: 그러네! 근데 왜 안 오지?
11. 수진: 올 거야. 안 올 리가 있겠어!? 기다려보자.

ROMANIZATION

1. (sikdangeseo dongchanghoe moim)
2. CHEOLSU: yeogiya! sujina.
3. SUJIN: ya. bangapda. chinguya!

CONT'D OVER

4. CHEOLSU: bangapda. geunde timhante jeonhwa badaseo?
5. SUJIN: jeonhwa? jeonhwa an badanneunde.
6. CHEOLSU: geureol liga eomneundett
7. SUJIN: wae? timhante museun iri inneun geoya?
8. CHEOLSU: timi ajik an watgeodeun.
9. SUJIN: eo? jeongmal!? timi an ol liga eopseo! i jari bonini butakhaeseo maryeonhan jarinikka
10. CHEOLSU: geureone! geunde wae an oji?
11. SUJIN: ol geoya. an ol liga itgeseo!? gidaryeoboja.

ENGLISH

1. (Student reunion at a restaurant)
2. CHEOL-SU: Sujin, I'm over here.
3. SU-JIN: Hey! It's good to see you, friend!
4. CHEOL-SU: It's good to see you, too. Did you get a phone call from Tim?
5. SU-JIN: Phone call? No. I didn't.
6. CHEOL-SU: That can't be..

CONT'D OVER

7. SU-JIN: Why? Did something happen to Tim?
8. CHEOL-SU: Tim hasn't come yet.
9. SU-JIN: Oh? Really?! There is no reason for him to not come because he was the one who arranged for all of us to meet.
10. CHEOL-SU: You're right! Then why hasn't he come yet?
11. SU-JIN: He will come. It's impossible that he won't come! Let's just wait.

VOCABULARY

Hangul	Romanization	English	Class
반갑다	bangapda	To be glad to see. To be a pleasure to see.	verb
왜	wae	why	expression, adverb
자리	jari	occasion, spot	noun
친구	chingu	friend	noun
전화를 받다	Jeonhwareul batda	to answer the phone, to pick up the phone	phrase
기다리다	gidarida	to wait	verb
본인	bonin	the person himself, oneself	noun
마련하다	Mareonhada	to prepare, to arrange	verb
근데	geunde	but, however (colloquial version of 그런데)	phrase

부탁하다	butakada	to ask, to request	verb
------	----------	--------------------	------

SAMPLE SENTENCES

만나서 반갑습니다 mannaseo bangapsseumnida. "It's a pleasure to meet you."	왜 아직도 저한테 존댓말 쓰세요? wae ajiktto jeohante jondaenmal sseuseyo? "Why are you still using polite language to me?"
왜 한국어를 공부하세요? wae hangugeoreul gongbuhaseyo? "Why are you studying Korean?"	김 씨는 그 자리에 어울리지 않게 옷을 입었다. Gim ssineun geu jarie eo-ul-liji anke oseul ibeotda. "Mr. Kim isn't properly dressed for the occasion."
제 친구는 선생님입니다. je chinguneun seonsaengnimimnida. "My friend is a teacher."	전화가 울렸고 제가 전화를 받았어요. Jeonhwaga ulryeotgo jega jeonhwareul badasseoyo. "The phone rang and I answered it."
청구서 이틀만 더 기다려주실 수 있을까요? 거의 다 준비되어 갑니다. cheongguseo iteulman deo gidaryeojusil su iseulkkayo? geoui da junbidoeeo gamnida. "Can you wait two more days for your invoice? I almost have it ready (for you)."	나는 몇 시간씩 너 기다리는 거 싫어! naneun myeot siganssik neo gidarineun geo sireo! "I hate waiting for you for hours!"
나는 기다리는 것을 좋아하지 않는다. naneun gidarineun geoseul joahaji anneunda. "I don't like waiting."	기다리지 말고 먼저 가세요. Gidariji malgo meonjeo gaseyo. "Don't wait for me. Please go first."

본인은 사실이 아니라고 합니다. bonin-eun sasil-i anirago hamnida. "The person in question says it's not true."	우리는 파티를 위해 음식을 마련하고 있다. Urineun patireul wihae eumsigeul maryeonhago itda. "We are preparing food for our party."
저는 오늘 바빠요. 근데 내일은 괜찮아요. jeoneun oneul bappayo. geunde naeireun gwaenchanayo. "I'm busy today. But tomorrow is ok."	김치찌개를 좋아해요. 근데 매워요. kimchijjigaereul joahaeyo. geunde maewoeyo. "I like kimchi stew. But it's spicy."
딱 한 번 만 더 부탁할게요. ttak han beon man deo butakhalgeyo. "I will only ask you one more time."	제 부탁 하나만 들어주세요. Je butak hanaman deureojuseyo. "Please do me a favor."

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

Despite the difference between 안 [an] "not" and 못 [mot] "can't," we use both 안 and 못 when presenting negative meanings

1. 안 [an] means "not," which is a shortened form of 아니 [ani] "no"/"not." The component 안 is an adverb that comes before a verb.

📖 **Formation:** 안 [an] "not" + regular verb = [verb] 안 하다 "don't verb"

For Example:

- 안 하다
an hada
"not do"/"don't do"
- 안 먹다
an meokda
"not eat"/"don't eat"

3. 안 보다
an boda
"not see or watch"/"don't see or watch"
4. 안 읽다
an ikda
"not read"/"don't read"
5. 난 그거 안 할거야.
Nan geugeo an halgeoya.
"I will not do that."
6. 나 그거 안 먹어.
Na geugeo an meogeo.
"I do not eat that."

2. 못 [mot] means "can't," which is also an adverb that comes before a verb.

 **Formation: 못 [mot] "can't" + regular verb = [verb] 못 하다 "can't verb"**

For Example:

1. 못 하다
mot hada
"can't do"
2. 못 먹다
mot meokda
"can't eat"
3. 못 보다
mot boda
"can't see"/"can't watch"
4. 못 읽다
mot ikda
"can't read"

5. 난 그거 못 해.
Nan geugeo mot hae.
 "I can't do that."
6. 나 그거 못 먹어.
Na geugeo mot meogeo.
 "I can't eat that."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is to Express "Cannot Be"/"Must Not Be"/"There Is No Reason Why..."

그럴 리가 없는데...

Geureol liga eomneunde...

"That can't be..."

"It can't be..." / "It must not be..." / "There is no reason why..." -ㄹ/을 리가 없다

-ㄹ/을 리가 없다 [-r/eul liga eodda], meaning "it can't be," "there is no reason why...," and "it's impossible that..." expresses a possibility that is impossible to believe in.

We use this pattern to show disbelief, doubt, or confusion.

* Note: -ㄹ/을 리가 있겠어? [-r/eul liga ikesseo?] "Can it be possible?" is an expression that also means -ㄹ/을 리가 없다 "It can't be..."

- When we use it in a declarative form, we use it in the negative form.

- When we use it in an interrogative (question) form, we use it in the affirmative form.

Conjugation Rule

Rule #1: We attach ㄹ 리가 없다 to verbs ending in a vowel (without a 받침).

Rule #2: We attach 을 리가 없다 to verbs ending in a consonant (with a 받침).

Rule #1: Adjective/Verb Stem + ㄹ 리가 없다: If the verb stem ends in a vowel (without a 받침) or if the adjective or the verb stem ends with a ㄹ 받침

* 받침 = a "final" (consonant or consonant cluster) on the end of a Korean orthographic syllable.

For Example:

Verb with Stem Ending in a Vowel	Verb Stem + ㄹ 리 가 없다	Becomes...	Translation...
하다 "to do"	하 + ㄹ 리가 없다	할 리가 없다	"can't be doing..."
가다 "to go"	가 + ㄹ 리가 없다	갈 리가 없다	"can't be going..."

Rule #2: Adjective/Verb Stem + 을 리가 없다: If the verb stem ends in a consonant (with a 받침).

For Example:

Verb with Stem Ending in a Consonant	Verb Stem + 을 리 가 없다	Becomes...	Translation...
늦다 "to be late"	늦 + 을 리가 없다	늦을 리가 없다	"can't be late..."
먹다 "to eat"	먹 + 을 리가 없다	먹을 리가 없다	"can't be eating..."

Sample Sentences

1. 그것은/그것이 **사실일 리가 없다.** (**Rule #1**)
Geugeoseun/Geugeosi sasil-il liga eopda.
 "It **cannot be** true."
 * Verb: 사실이다 [*sasilida*] "be true"
 * Verb Stem: 사실이 [*sasili*] (**Rule #1**)
 * Verb Stem + ㄹ 리가 없다: 사실이 + ㄹ 리가 없다 - 사실일 리가 없다 "cannot be true"

2. 유령이 있을 리가 있어?/유령이 있을 리가 없다. (Rule #2)
Yuryeong-i i-seul liga i-sseo?/Yuryeong-i i-seul liga eopdda.
"How can there be a ghost?"/There **can't be** a ghost."
 * Verb: 있다 [*idda*] "to be"
 * Verb Stem: 있 [*it̚*] (Rule #2)
 * Verb Stem + 일 리가 없다: 있 + 을 리가 없다 - 있을 리가 없다 "there can't be"

3. 팀이 그렇게 바쁠 리가 없어. (Rule #1)
Tim-i geureoke ba-ppeul liga eopsseo.
"Tim can't be (that) busy."
 * Verb: 바쁘다 [*babbeuda*] "to be busy"
 * Verb Stem: 바쁘 [*babbeu*] (Rule #1)
 * Verb Stem + ㄹ 리가 없다: 바쁘 + ㄹ 리가 없다 - 바쁠 리가 없다 "can't be busy"

4. 데비가 그런 짓을 했을 리가 없어. (Rule #2)
Debi-ga geureon ji-seul hae-sseul liga eopsseo.
"Debbie couldn't have done such a thing."
 * Verb: 했다 [*haedda*] "did"
 * Verb Stem: 했 [*haet̚*] (Rule #2)
 * Verb Stem + 을 리가 없다: 했 + 을 리가 없다 - 했을 리가 없다 "couldn't have done"

5. 철수가 올 리가 없어. (Rule #1)
Cheol-su-ga ol liga eopsseo.
"It's impossible (for Cheol-su) to come."
 * Verb: 오다 [*oda*] "to come"
 * Verb Stem: 오 [*o*] (Rule #1)
 * Verb Stem + ㄹ 리가 없다: 오 + ㄹ 리가 없다 - 올 리가 없다 "can't be coming"

Examples from This Dialogue

1. 그럴 리가 없는데...
Geureol liga eomneunde...
"That cannot be possible..."

2. 팀이 안 올 리가 없어!
Timi an ol liga eopsseo!
"There is no reason for him to not come!"
3. 올 거야. 안 올 리가 있겠어!
Ol geoya. An ol liga itgetseo!
"(He) will come. (It's) impossible that he won't come!"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

A Korean "Student Reunion": 동창회 [*Dongchanghoe*]

동창회 [*Dongchanghoe*], also known as 동창모임 [*dongchangmoim*], is a "student reunion." 동창 [*dongchang*] means "an alumni" or "a schoolmate," and 회 [*hoe*] means "a gathering" or "a reunion." We can also call it a 모임 [*moim*].

There are different types of 동창회(=동창모임)

1. 초등학교 동창회 [*Cho-deung-hakgyo Dongchanghoe*] "elementary school reunion,"
2. 중학교 동창회 [*Junghakgyo Dongchanghoe*] "middle-school reunion,"
3. 고등학교 동창회 [*Go-deunghakgyo Dongchanghoe*] "high-school reunion,"
4. and 대학교 동창회 [*Daehakgyo Dongchanghoe*] "university/college reunion."

LESSON NOTES

Lower Intermediate S2 #2

Being Indecisive in Korea

CONTENTS

2	Korean Hangul
2	Romanization
3	English
4	Vocabulary
5	Sample Sentences
6	Vocabulary Phrase Usage
8	Grammar
11	Cultural Insight

2

KOREAN HANGUL

1. (식당에서 팀을 기다리고 있는 수진이와 철수)
2. 수진: 두 시간이나 기다렸는데.와. 진짜 안 오네.
3. 철수: 그러게. 우리 팀이 오든 말든 먼저 먹자. 저기요! 여기 자장면하고 짬뽕 주세요.
4. 철수: 수진아. (목소리가 점점 커지며) 수진아. 수진아!
5. 수진: 어! 불렀어?
6. 철수: 무슨 생각을 그렇게 열심히 해!? 얼마나 열심히 생각하던지 3번이나 불렀는데 모르니?!
7. 수진: 어. 팀 때문에. 혹시 무슨 일이 있나해서.
8. 철수: 무슨 일이 있든지 없든지.난 신경 끝래.
9. 수진: 안 되겠다. 나 먼저 가볼께. 미안.
10. 철수: 야! 그럼 자장면은?
11. 수진: 너가 다 먹든지 말든지 맘대로 해!
12. 철수: 정말? 앗싸!

ROMANIZATION

1. (sikdangeseo timeul gidarigo inneun sujiniwa cheolsu)

CONT'D OVER

2. SUJIN: du siganina gidaryeonneunde.wa. jinjja an one.
3. CHEOLSU: geureoge. uri timi odeun maldeun meonjeo meokja. jeogiyo! yeogi jajangmyeonhago jjamppong juseyo.
4. CHEOLSU: sujina. (moksoriga jeomjeom keojimyeo) sujina. sujina!
5. SUJIN: eo! bulleoseo?
6. CHEOLSU: museun saenggageul geureoke yeolsimhi hae!? eolmana yeolsimhi saenggakhadeonji 3beonina bulleonneunde moreuni?!
7. SUJIN: eo. tim ttaemune. hoksi museun iri innahaeseo.
8. CHEOLSU: museun iri itdeunji eopdeunji.nan singyeong kkeullae.
9. SUJIN: an doegetda. na meonjeo gabolkke. mian.
10. CHEOLSU: ya! geureom jajangmyeoneun?
11. SUJIN: neoga da meokdeunji maldeunji mamdaero hae!
12. CHEOLSU: jeongmal? atssa!

ENGLISH

1. (Su-jin and Cheol-su are still at the restaurant waiting for Tim)
2. SU-JIN: We've been waiting for two hours... Wow. He's really not coming.

CONT'D OVER

3. CHEOL-SU: I know. Well, whether or not he comes let's go ahead and eat first.
Can we please have one black bean noodle and one spicy seafood noodle?
4. CHEOL-SU: Su-jin.(voice gradually gets louder) Su-jin.Su-jin!
5. SU-JIN: Yeah? Did you say something?
6. CHEOL-SU: What were you thinking about? You were so deep in thought that you didn't even hear me call your name three times...
7. SU-JIN: Oh,it's because of Tim. I was wondering what happened to him.
8. CHEOL-SU: Whether or not something did happen...I don't want to think about it.
9. SU-JIN: I think I'm going to go check up on him.
10. CHEOL-SU: Hey! What about the black bean noodles?
11. SU-JIN: Whether or not you eat all of it, it's up to you!
12. CHEOL-SU: Really? Hooray!

VOCABULARY

Hangul	Romanization	English
저기요	jeogiyo	Excuse me.
무슨	museun	what, what kind of
혹시	hoksi	by any chance, perhaps
열심히	yeolsimhi	hard, diligently

해.	hae.	I do. Do it. (intimate)
신경 끄다	sin-gyeong kkeuda	to ignore
때문에	ttaemune	because of
먼저	meonjeo	first, ahead
점점	jeomjeom	more and more
마음대로	ma-eumdaero	as one likes, as one pleases

SAMPLE SENTENCES

저기요. 지금 몇 시예요? Jeogiyo. jigeum myeot siyeyo? "Excuse me. What time is it now?"	무슨 드라마 봐? museun deurama bwa? "What kind of drama are you watching?"
혹시 질문이 있으면 하세요. hoksi jilmun-i isseumyeon haseyo. "If you have any questions, please ask."	혹시 얼음 있어요? hoksi eoreum isseoyo? "Do you have ice by any chance?"
열심히 공부해서 좋은 성적을 받았어요. Yeolsimhi gongbuhaeseo jo-eun seongjeok-eul badasseoyo. "I studied hard and got good grades."	빨리해! bbal-lihae! "Do it quick!"
만약 민수가 너 귀찮게 하면 그냥 신경 꺼. Manyak Minsuga neo gwichanke hamyeon geu-nyang sin-gyeong kkeo. "Just ignore Minsu if he bothers you."	요즘에 여자친구 때문에 힘들어요. yojeume yeojachingu ddaemune himdeuleoyo. "I'm very tired these days because of my girlfriend."
아르바이트 때문에 주말에 너무 바빠요. Areubaiteu ttamune jumale neomu bappayo. "I'm very busy on weekends because of my part-time job."	기다리지 말고 먼저 가세요. Gidariji malgo meonjeo gaseyo. "Don't wait for me. Please go first."

먼저 밥을 먹자. neonjeo bab-eul meokja. "Let's eat first."	점점 더 추워져요. Jeomjeom deo chuwojyeoyo. "It's getting colder and colder."
내 방에 마음대로 들어오지 마. Nae bang-e maeumdaero deureo-oji ma. "Don't come into my room just as you please."	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

1. 자장면 (*jajangmyeon*) and 짬뽕 (*jjambbong*)

About 자장면

자장면 (*jajangmyeon*, commonly called *jjajangmyeon*), meaning "Korean Black Noodle," is a popular Koreanized dish derived from Chinese food. It consists of wheat noodles topped with a thick sauce made of *chunjang* (hangul: 춘장; Chinese: 春醬), which is "a salty black soybean paste," diced meat and vegetables, and sometimes also seafood. 자장 (*jajang*), the name of the sauce, is the Korean pronunciation of the Chinese characters 炸醬, which literally means "fried sauce." Moreover, 면 (*myeon*) means "noodle"; therefore, 자장면 is "black noodle" in Korea. With about one hundred years of history, 자장면 is called one of the national foods of South Korea. In fact, it has been by far the most popular delivery food in Korea, and almost every Chinese restaurant in Korea has 자장면 on its menu. What's more? More than six million servings of 자장면 are sold in South Korea per day. It normally costs about \$.00 (US) per dish.

For Example:

- 여기 자장면 주세요...

Yeogi jajangmyeon juseyo...

"Please give me Korean Black Noodle here..."

- 자장면 한 그릇에 얼마지요?

Jajangmyeon han geureuse eolmajiyo?

"How much is (one serving of) Korean Black Noodle?"

* Note: 한 그릇 = 한 "one" + 그릇 "serving"/"dish" = 한 그릇 "one serving"/"one dish"

About 짬뽕

짬뽕 (*jjambbong*) is a Japanese noodle dish with origins from China. It is made by frying pork, seafood, and vegetables with lard; we also add a soup made with chicken and pig bones. The word **짬뽕** (*jjambbong*) is a slang term that means "mix-up" in Korean. Just like 자장면, 짬뽕 is one of the most popular Koreanized Chinese foods in Korea. Just be aware that 짬뽕 is spicy. It also costs about \$.00 (US) per dish.

For Example:

1. 와~~ 짬뽕 진짜 맵다!
Wa~~ jjamppong jinjja maepdda!
"Wow~~ Jjamppong is really spicy!"
2. 우리 짬뽕 먹으러 갈까?
Wuri jjamppong meogeureo galkka?
"Shall we go to eat Jjambbong?"

2. (3번) 이나 ((*se-beon*) *ina*), meaning "as many as (three times)"

(이)나 [*(i)na*] is a word that expresses emphasis that is much more than expected, meaning "as much as" or "as many as."

If the ending sound of the noun/counting unit is a consonant, use 이나 (*ina*).

If the ending sound of the noun/counting unit is a vowel, use 나 (*na*).

Formation: Pure Korean Numbers + Counting units + 이나 (*i-na*), meaning "as much as" or "as many as"

For Example:

1. 두 시간이나 기다렸는데...
Du sigan-i-na gidaryeot-neunde...
"(We've been) waiting for as long as two hours..."
2. 3번이나 불렀는데 모르니?
Sebeon-ina bul-reotneunde moreuni?
"How didn't you notice me even if I called your name as many as three times?"

3. 앗싸! (*at-ssa!*) "Hooray!"

앗싸 (*at-ssa!*) "hooray" is an expression that Korean people say when they feel lucky, fantastic, awesome, etc.

For Example:

1. (when receiving some amount of unexpected money)

앗싸~ 고마워!

At-ssa~ gomawo!

"Hooray, thank you!"

2. (when receiving some special treats)

앗싸~ 기분 최고!

At-ssa~ gi-bun choego!

"Hooray, awesome feeling!"

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is -하든지 말든지, Which Means "Whether Or Not You Do It").

너가 다 먹든지 말든지 맘대로 해!

Neoga da meokdeunji maldeunji mamdaero hae!

"Whether or not you eat all of it, it's up to you!"

For Giving Alternatives: A든지 B든지 "either A or B..." or "whether A or B..."

-든 (*-deun*) is a shortened form of -든지 (*-deunji*), meaning "either A or B" or "whether A or B."

We use -든(지) when expressing a choice of anything between two (or more) things, which indicates that the speaker would not mind any of those (two or more) taking place. Moreover, we often repeat -든(지) in Korean sentences such as 가든지 말든지, which means "whether or not going"; 읽든지 말든지, which means "whether or not reading it"; 먹든지 안 먹든지, which means "whether or not you eat"; etc.

Two of the Most Common Uses of -(이)든/-(이)든지

1. A(noun) + (이)든/(이)든지 B(noun) + (이)든/(이)든지: "either A or B" - A(이)든 B(이)든

Rule #1: We attach -든(지) to nouns ending in a vowel.

Rule #2: We attach -이든(지) to nouns ending in a consonant.

Rule #1: Nouns

Ending in a Vowel	Noun + -든(지)	Becomes...	"English"
너 ("you") and 나 ("I")	너+든(지) 나+든(지)	너든 나든/ 너든지 나든지	"either you or I (me)"
커피("coffee") and 과자 ("a snack")	커피+든(지) 과자+든(지)	커피든 과자든/ 커피든지 과자든지	"either coffee or a snack"

Rule #2: Nouns

Ending in a Consonant	Noun + -이든(지)	Becomes...	"English"
물 ("water") and 빵 ("bread")	물+이든(지) 빵이든(지)	물이든 빵이든/ 물이든지 빵이든지	"either water or bread"
남자 아이(아들) ("a boy (a son)") and 여자 아이(딸) ("a girl (a daughter)")	아들+이든(지) 딸+이든(지)	아들이든 딸이든/ 아들이든지 딸이든지	"either a boy or a girl"

For Example:

- 커피든 물이든 아무것이나 주세요.
Keopideun murideun amugeona juseyo.
"Either coffee or water, please give me anything."
- 빵이든지 과자든지 난 상관 안 합니다.
Ppang-i-deunji Gwajadeunji nan sangwan an hamnida.
"Either bread or a snack, I don't care."

3. **아들이든 딸이든** 상관없습니다.
Adeurideun ttarideun sangkwan-eopseumnida.
 "Either a boy or a girl, I wouldn't care."

2. Verbs (verb stem) + 든(지) 말든(지): "whether or not A(verb)" - A든(지) 말든(지)

Rule: We attach 든 말든/든지 말든지 to a verb stem.

Verbs	Verb Stem + 든 말 든/든지 말든지	Becomes...	"English"
마시다 ("to drink")	마시 + 든(지) 말든(지)	마시든 말든/마시든지 말든지	"whether or not you drink it"
먹다 ("to eat")	먹 + 든(지) 말든(지)	먹든 말든/ 먹든지 말든지	"whether or not you eat"
가다 ("to go")	가 + 든(지) 말든(지)	가든 말든/ 가든지 말든지	"whether or not you go"

For Example:

1. 너가 커피를 **마시든 말든**, 난 상관안해.
Neoga keopi-reul masideun maldeun nan sangkwan-anhae.
 "Whether or not you drink coffee, I don't care."
2. 당신이 빵을 **먹든지 말든지**, 그건 내 일이 아닙니다.
Dangshini ppang-eul meokdeunji maldeunji geugeon nae iri animnida.
 "Whether or not you eat bread, that's not my business."
3. 집에 **가든지** 학교에 **가든지** 해.
Jibe gadeunji hakgyo-e gadeunji hae.
 "(You) should, whether going (back) home or heading (back) to school."

***NOTE:** The usage of -던 (*deon*)/-던지 (*deonji*), meaning "a past cause": We often use it with 얼마나 (*eolmana*), which means "how" in a sentence.

Formation: Verb stem + 든 말든/든지 말든지 "whether or not A" or "whether A or B"

Formation: Verb (verb stem) + 던지

For Example:

1. 얼마나 열심히 **하든지** 내가 불러도 모르던데...
Eolmana yeolsimi hadeonji naega bulreodo moreudeonde...
"You worked so hard that you didn't even hear me call you..."

Examples from This Dialogue:

1. 우리 팀이 **오든 말든** 먼저 먹자.
Uri Timi odeun maldeun meonjeo meokja.
"Whether or not Tim comes, let's go ahead and eat first."
2. 무슨 일이 **있든지 없든지**...난 신경 끄래.
Museun iri itdeunji eopdeunji...Nan sin-gyeong kkeulrae.
"Whether or not something has happened...I don't want to think about it."
3. 너가 다 **먹든지 말든지** 맘대로 해!
Neoga da meokdeunji maldeunji mamdaero hae!
"Whether or not you eat all of it, it's up to you!"
4. 얼마나 열심히 **생각하던지** 3번이나 불렀는데 모르니?
Eolmana yeolsimi saeng-gakhadeonji sebeonina bulreotneunde moreuni?
"You're so deep in thought that you didn't even hear me call your name three times?"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

자장면과 짬뽕

자장면 (*Jajangmyeon*) (commonly called *jjajangmyeon*) is a popular Korean dish. 자장면 uses thick noodles made from white wheat flour. The noodles, which are made entirely by hand

and not by machines, are called 수타면 (*sutamyeon*) and are praised in South Korea as an essential ingredient of good 자장면. Moreover, the sauce is made with black bean paste.

Variations of the 자장면 dish include 간자장면 (*ganjajangmyeon*), which is 자장면 served with the 자장 sauce without the starch, with the sauce and noodles being served separately in different bowls, and 삼선자장면 (*samseon jajangmyeon*), which incorporates seafood such as squid, shrimp, sea cucumber, and others (but never fish). 삼선간자장면 (*Samseon ganjajangmyeon*) consists of noodles served with sauce, which contains seafood on the side.

짬뽕

A Korean dish called 짬뽕 (*jjambbong*) tends to be the most spicy. In the late nineteenth century and early twentieth century, many Chinese emigrated to Japan and Korea. There was a regular sea route between Nagasaki and 제물포 (*Jemulpo*) via 부산 (*Busan*). Many of the Chinese immigrants opened restaurants and created new versions of their home food. In Korea, it became spicier by using red pepper, chili oil, and *doubanjiang* (Chinese red pepper paste). Today, it is a popular Koreanized Chinese dish that is common in Korea and even in Korean neighborhoods around the world. By the way, In Korea, 짬뽕 (*jjambbong*) is a slang term that means "mix-up."

LESSON NOTES

Lower Intermediate S2 #3

A Korean Interruption

CONTENTS

2	Korean Hangul
2	Romanization
3	English
4	Vocabulary
5	Sample Sentences
6	Vocabulary Phrase Usage
7	Grammar
11	Cultural Insight

3

KOREAN HANGUL

1. (전화에서)
2. 팀: 여보세요.
3. 수진: 여보세요. 팀?! 무슨 일이야? 왜 이렇게 전화를 안 받아?
4. 팀: 미안해. 수진아. 뭐 좀 하느라고.
5. 수진: 무슨 일? 철수하고 나하고 얼마나 기다린 줄 알아?
6. 팀: 사실은 차가 갑자기 서서.차하고 씨름 좀 하느라고.
7. 수진: 차가 고장난 거야?
8. 팀: 그게 아니고 기..름.이. 다 떨어져서 차가 선 거였어. 그래서 2시간 동안 주유소까지 차를 미느라고. 아..오래 기다리게 해서 미안.
9. 수진: 나보다는 철수가 배고픔을 참느라고 고생을 했지. 물론, 지금은 자장면과 짬뽕을 맛있게 먹고 있겠지만.
10. 팀: 뭐? 자장면하고 짬뽕을 한꺼번에?!
11. 철수: 누가 내 얘기를 하나? 왜 이렇게 귀가 간지럽지?!

ROMANIZATION

1. (jeonhwaeseo)
2. TIM: yeoboseyo.

CONT'D OVER

3. SUJIN: yeoboseyo. tim?! museun iriya? wae ireoke jeonhwareul an bada?
4. TIM: mianhae. sujina. mwo jom haneurago.
5. SUJIN: museun il? cheolsuhago nahago eolmana gidarin jul ara?
6. TIM: sasireun chaga gapjagi seoseo.chahago ssireum jom haneurago.
7. SUJIN: chaga gojangnan geoya?
8. TIM: geuge anigo gi..reum.i. da tteoreojyeoseo chaga seon geoyeoseo. geuraeseo 2sigan dongan juyusokkaji chareul mineurago. a..orae gidarige haeseomian.
9. SUJIN: nabodaneun cheolsuga baegopeumeul chamneurago gosaengeul haetji. mullon, jigeumeun jajangmyeongwa jjamppongeul mannitge meokgo itgetjiman.
10. TIM: mwo? jajangmyeonhago jjamppongeul hankkeobeone?!
11. CHEOLSU: nuga nae yaegireul hana? wae ireoke gwiga ganjireopji?!

ENGLISH

1. (On the phone)
2. TIM: Hello.
3. SUJIN: Hello. Tim? What happened? Why didn't you pick up the phone?

CONT'D OVER

4. TIM: I'm sorry, Sujin. I was doing something...
5. SUJIN: What were you doing? Do you know how long Cheolsu and I have been waiting?
6. TIM: Actually, my car stopped running all of a sudden...I was dealing with car problems...
7. SUJIN: Did your car break down?
8. TIM: That wasn't it. the gas.. tank.. was empty, so the car stopped
9. running. I had to push the car to the gas station for two hours. Ah.. I'm
10. sorry I made you wait for so long.
11. SUJIN: I think Cheolsu suffered more than me because he had to control himself from his hunger. Of course, he's probably enjoying his bowls of black bean noodles and spicy seafood noodles.
12. TIM: What? He's eating both black bean noodles and spicy seafood noodles?
13. CHEOLSU: Is someone talking about me? Why are my ears itchy?

VOCABULARY

Hangul	Romanization	English	Class
여보세요	yeoboseyo	Hello? (used on the phone)	expression

고생하다	gosaeng-hada	to suffer, to have a hard time	verb
주유소	juyuso	gas station	noun
기름이 떨어지다	gireumi tteoreojida	to run out of gas	phrase
고장나다	gojangnada	to be broken, to break	verb
물론	mullon	of course, as a matter of fact	expression
얘기	yaegi	story, talk	noun
얼마나	eolmana	for how long, how much	
한꺼번에	hankkeobeeon-e	(all) at once, at the same time	adverb
배고픔을 참다	baegopeumeul chamda	to control hunger, to suppress hunger	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

여보세요, 안나랑 통화할 수 있을까요? yeoboseyo, annarang tonghwahal su iseulkkayo? "Hello, can I speak to Anna?"	여보세요, 누구세요? yeoboseyo, nuguseyo? "Hello. Who's speaking?"
술을 많이 마시면 간이 고생한다. sureul mani masimyeon gani gosaenghanda. "Your liver suffers when you hit the bottle."	주유소에 들리는 것이 좋겠어요. Juyuso-e deul-lineun geosi joketsseoyo. "We'd better stop at a gas station."
차는 기름이 떨어지고 있다. Chaneun gireumni tteoreojigo itda. "The car is running out of gas."	노트북이 고장 났어요. noteubuk-i gojang nasseoyo. "My laptop computer is broken."

시계가 또 고장 났어요. Sigye-ga tto gojang nasseoyo. "My watch is broken again."	물론이죠. mullonijyo. "Of course."
그 얘기를 믿을 수가 없어요. Geu yaegireul mideul suga eopseoyo. "I can't believe that story."	얼마나 자주 운동하세요? eolmana jaju undonghaseyo? "How often do you work out?"
한꺼번에 다 할 수 있어요? Hankkeobeone da hal su itseoyo? "Can you do them all at once?"	다이어트를 하고 있기에 배고픔을 참아야 해. Dai-eoteureul hago itgie baegopeumeul chamaya hae. "I have to control my hunger because I am on a diet."

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

1. Nouns (people or things) + 하고 씨름하다 [*hago ssireumhada*] It literally means, "to wrestle with [nouns]".

It often means, "to tackle [nouns]", "to grapple with [nouns]", "to deal with [nouns]"

- 씨름 [*ssireum*] is a noun, "wrestling"

- 씨름하다 [*ssireumhada*] is a verb, "to wrestle"

Therefore, 명사 "noun" + 와/과/하고 [*wa/kwa/hago*] "with" 씨름하다 "to wrestle" = [NOUN]와/과/하고 씨름하다.

For Example:

1. 어려운 문제와 씨름하다.

Eo-ryeo-un munjewa ssireumhada.

"Tackle a difficult problem".

2. 차와 씨름하다.

Chawa ssireumhada.

"Deal with a car problem (that is broken / that has a problem)".

2. 귀가 간지럽다 [guiga ganjireopdda] "Ears are itchy."

This Korean expression, 귀가 간지럽다 [gwuiga ganjireopda], is often said when somebody is "saying something bad about someone".

- 귀 [gui] "ears"

- 간지럽다 [ganjireopda] "to itch" - "is itching"

- 귀가 간지럽다 [guiga ganjireopda] "My ears are itchy." has **TWO meanings**,

One is - (the literal meaning) "My ears are itchy."

The other one is - (common expression) "My ears are itchy because it seems like somebody is saying something bad about me."

For Example:

1. 누군가가 지금 내 욕하나봐, 귀가 자꾸 간지럽네...

Nu-gun-ga-ga jigeum nae yokanabwa, guiga jakku ganjireopne...

"It seems like somebody is saying something bad about me. My ears are itchy..."

2. 팀: 귀가 왜 이리 간지럽지!?

Tim: Guiga wae i-li ganjireopji!?

"Tim: Why are my ears so itchy!?"

데비: 내가 지금 너 욕하는 중이거든...

Debi: Naega jigeum neo yokhaneun jung-i-geo-deun...

"Debbie: (Because) I am saying something bad about you right now..."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is -(하)느라고, Meaning "to Try to Go about Doing Something and Be Interrupted."

차하고 씨름 좀 하느라고...

Chahago ssireum jom haneurago...

"I was dealing with car problems..."

For Giving an Explanation of a Cause: -(하)느라고 "(I couldn't do it/couldn't make it because) I was busy doing something/being interrupted by something."

We use the common expression -(하)느라고 ((*ha*)*neu-ra-go*) when we are "trying to go about doing something but are being interrupted."

We often use this Verb Stem + 느라고 construction when trying to explain the cause of an action, an outcome, or a situation that is unexpected.

Formation

Verb Stem + 느라고 (*neu-ra-go*), meaning "I was busy doing something..."

Verbs	Verb Stem + 느라고	Becomes...	"English"
1. 하다 "to do"	하 + 느라고	하느라고...	"I was busy doing something"
2. 참다 "to be patient"/"to control"	참 + 느라고	참느라고...	"I was busy being patient/controlling"
3. 기다리다 "to wait"	기다리 + 느라고	기다리느라고...	"I was busy waiting"
4. 먹다 "to eat"	먹 + 느라고	먹느라고...	"I was busy eating"
5. 공부하다 "to study"	공부하 + 느라고	공부하느라고...	"I was busy studying"
6. 밀다 "to push"	*밀 => 미 + 느라고	미느라고...	"I was busy pushing"
7. 놀다 "to play"	*놀 => 노 + 느라고	노느라고...	"I was busy playing"

* Note: If the verb stem has ㄹ 받침, remove ㄹ 받침 and attach 느라고.

Sample Sentences

1. **하다, meaning "to do," (하 + 느라고)**
 뭐 좀 하느라고 늦었어, 미안...
Mwo jom haneurago neu-jeot-sseo, mian...
 "I was late **because I was busy doing** something, sorry..."

2. **참다, meaning "to be patient"/"to control," (참 + 느라고)**
 배고픔을 참느라고 죽을 뻔 했어!
Bae-go-peumeul chamneurago jukgeul ppeon haetseo!
 "I was about to die because of hunger!" = "I was about to die **because of controlling** myself from hunger!"

3. **기다리다, meaning "to wait," (기다리 + 느라고)**
 너 기다리느라고 밥도 못 먹었다!
Neo gidarineurago babdo mot meo-geot-da!
 "I couldn't have a meal **since I have been waiting (= because I was busy waiting)** for you!"

4. **먹다, meaning "to eat," (먹 + 느라고)**
 너무 맛있게 먹느라고 엄마가 부르는 것도 몰랐어요.
Neo-mu ma-sit-ge meokneurago eom-maga bureuneun geotdo mol-rat-sseoyo.
 "I couldn't notice that mom called me **since I was busy eating (= because of eating food too diligently).**"

5. **공부하다, meaning "to study," (공부하 + 느라고)**
 너무 열심히 공부하느라고 밥 먹는 것도 까먹었어요...
Neo-mu yeol-simhi gongbuhaneurago bab meokneun geotdo kka-meogeotseoyo...
 "I just forgot to eat a meal **since I was busy studying too hard (= because of studying too hard).**"

6. **밀다, meaning "to push," (밀=>미 + 느라고)**
 차를 너무 오랫동안 미느라고 힘이 다 빠졌어요...
Chareul neo-mu o-raetdong-an mineurago himi da ppajyeotseoyo...
 "I lost all the energy **since I was busy pushing the car too long (= because of pushing the car too long)...**"

7. **놀다, meaning "to play," (놀=>노 + 느라고)**

너무 열심히 **노느라고** 숙제도 못 했습니다.

*Neo-mu yeol-simhi **noneurago** sukjedo mot hae-seumnida.*

"I couldn't do homework **since I was busy playing too hard (= because of playing too much).**"

Examples from This Dialogue

1. 미안. 수진아. 뭐 좀 하느라고...

Mi-an, Sujin-a. Mwo jom haneurago...

"Sorry Sujin, I was busy doing something..."

2. 차하고 씨름 좀 하느라고...

Chahago ssireum jom haneurago...

"(I couldn't make it) because I was busy struggling with a car..."

3. 주유소까지 차를 미느라고.

Juyusokkaji chareul mineurago.

"(I was busy) pushing my car to the gas station."

4. 배고픔을 참느라고 고생을 했지.

Baegopeum-eul chamneurago gosaeng-eul hatji.

"He suffered (was suffering) because he had to control himself from his hunger."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Some Korean Ear-Related Expressions

귀가 간지럽다, meaning "my ears are burning"

It's an expression that we commonly use in Korean, describing "my ears are burning" in English. Korean people often say 귀가 왜 이렇게 간지럽지? (*gwiga wae ireoke ganjireopji?*), which means "How come my ears are burning?" and 누가 내 욕하나? (*Nu-ga nae yokana?*) "Is

someone backbiting me now?"

In the old Korean saying, "the left side of the ear would be burning if somebody speaks__ill of me," 남이 욕하면 왼쪽 귀가 가렵고 (*nami yokamyeon owenjjok geiga garyeopko*), and "the right side of the ear would be burning if somebody speaks well of me," 칭찬하면 오른쪽 귀가 가렵다 (*ching-chan-hamyeon oreunjjok gwiga garyeopda*).

Here are the expression's parts:

남이 욕하면 (*Nam-i yok-ka-myeon*) means "if someone speaks ill of me"

왼쪽 귀가 (*owen-jjok gwiga*) means "the left side of the ear"

가렵고 (*ga-ryeop-ko*) means "is burning"

남이 욕하면 왼쪽 귀가 가렵고 means "the left side of the ear would be burning if somebody speaks ill of me"

남이 칭찬하면 (*Nami ching-chanhamyeon*) means "if somebody speaks well of me"

오른쪽 귀가 (*o-reun-jjok gwi-ga*) means "the right side of the ear"

가렵다 (*ga-ryeop-da*) means "is burning"

칭찬하면 오른쪽 귀가 가렵다 means "the right side of the ear would be burning if somebody speaks well of me"

LESSON NOTES

Lower Intermediate S2 #4

Wait For Me in Korea

CONTENTS

- 2 Korean Hangul
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 8 Grammar

4

KOREAN HANGUL

1. (전화에서)
2. 수진: 여보세요.
3. 팀: 여보세요. 수진아. 차에 기름 다 넣었어. 지금 차 타고 너한테 갈 테니까 기다리고 있어.
4. 수진: 알았어. 그럼, 집 앞에 있는 편의점에서 기다릴 테니까 거기서 만날까?
5. 팀: 그래. 내가 빨리 갈 테니까 조금만 기다리고 있어.
6. 수진: 아! 맞다! 철수는 어떻게 하지? 아직도 식당에서 자장면 먹고 있나?
7. 팀: 걱정하지 마! 철수는 열심히 먹고 있을 거야. 개 자장면 중독이잖아! 하하!
8. 수진: 비 와서 길이 미끄러울 테니까 운전 조심하고!
9. 팀: 알았어요. 조심할 테니까 걱정하지 마세요. 수진 씨.
10. 수진: 이만 전화 끊을 테니까 어서 오세요. 팀씨.

ROMANIZATION

1. (jeonhwaeseo)
2. SUJIN: yeoboseyo.

CONT'D OVER

3. TIM: yeoboseyo. sujina. chae gireum da neoeoseo. jigeum cha tago neohante gal tenikka gidarigo isseo.
4. SUJIN: arasseo. geureom, jip ape inneun pyeonuijeomeseo gidaril tenikka geogiseo mannalkka?
5. TIM: geurae. naega ppalli gal tenikka jogeumman gidarigo isseo.
6. SUJIN: a! matda! cheolsuneun eotteoke haji? ajikdo sikdangeseo jajangmyeon meokgo inna?
7. TIM: geokjeonghaji ma! cheolsuneun nyeolsimhi meokgo iseul geoya. gyae jajangmyeon jungdogijana! haha!
8. SUJIN: bi waseo giri mikkeureoul tenikka unjeon josimhago!
9. TIM: arasseoyo. josimhal tenikka geokjeonghaji maseyo. sujin ssi.
10. SUJIN: iman jeonhwa kkeuneul tenikka eoseo oseyo. timssi.

ENGLISH

1. (On the phone)
2. SUJIN: Hello.
3. TIM: Hello, Sujin. I filled the car up with gas. I'll drive over to you, so just wait.

CONT'D OVER

4. SUJIN: Okay. Then, I'll wait for you at the convenience store in front of my house. Should we meet there?
5. TIM: Okay. I'll be there soon, so just wait a bit.
6. SUJIN: Ah! That's right! What about Cheolsu? Is he still eating black bean noodles at the restaurant?
7. TIM: Don't worry! He's probably enjoying his meal. He's addicted to black bean noodles! Haha!
8. SUJIN: It's raining, so the roads will be slippery. Drive carefully!
9. TIM: Okay. I'll be careful, so don't worry, Sujin.
10. SUJIN: I'm hanging up now, so please come, Tim.

VOCABULARY

Hangul	Romanization	English	Class
차에 기름을 넣다	cha-e gireumeul neotda	to fill a car up with gas	phrase
걱정하다	geokjeonghada	to worry, to be worried	verb
조심하다	josimhada	to be careful, to be cautious	verb
미끄럽다	mikkeureopda	to be slippery	verb
비 오다	bi oda	to rain	phrase
중독	Jungdok	addiction	noun

앞에	ape	in front of	adverb
편의점	pyeon-uijeom	convenience store	noun
기다리다	gidarida	to wait	verb
어서	eoseo	quickly	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

지금 차에 기름을 넣어야 해. Jigeum cha-e gireumeul neo-eoya hae. "I need to fill my car up with gas now."	걱정하지 마세요. 살아서 돌아올게요. geokkjeonghaji maseyo. saraseo doraolkkeyo. "Don't worry. I will come back alive."
이건 제가 걱정할 필요가 없는 문제예요. igeon jega geokkjeonghal piryoga eomneun munjeyeyo. "It's a problem that I don't have to worry about."	어두우니까 조심하세요. eodu-unikka josimhaseyo. "It's dark, so be careful."
여기는 미끄러워서 위험해요. yeogi-neun mikkeureowoseo wiheomhaeyo. "This part is slippery, so it's dangerous here."	비 온다. 뛰자! bi onda. ttwija! "It's raining. Let's run!"
저는 카페인 중독입니다. Jeoneun kape-in jungdok-imnida. "I have an addiction to caffeine."	그 관광객 안내소 앞에서 만나요. geu gwangwangaek annaeso apeseo mannayo. "Let's meet in front of the tourist information."

저녁 7시에 홍대 앞에서 보자. Jeonyeok ilgopssie hongdae apeseo boja. "Let's meet at 7:00 in front of Hongik University."	한국에서는 어느 편의점에서나 간단하게 택배를 보낼 수 있습니다. hangugeseoneun eoneu pyeonuijeomeseona gandanhage taekbaereul bonaen su itseumnida. "You can easily send a parcel using the home-delivery service at any convenience stores in South Korea."
오늘은 편의점에 들르지 않고 학교로 바로 갔어. Oneul-eun pyeonuijeom-e deuleuji anko hakgyoro baro gasseo. "Today, I didn't stop at the convenience store and went straight to school."	청구서 이틀만 더 기다려주실 수 있을까요? 거의 다 준비되어 갑니다. cheongguseo itelman deo gidaryeojusil su iseulkkayo? geoui da junbidoeeo gamnida. "Can you wait two more days for your invoice? I almost have it ready (for you)."
나는 몇 시간씩 너 기다리는 거 싫어! naneun myeot siganssik neo gidarineun geo sireo! "I hate waiting for you for hours!"	나는 기다리는 것을 좋아하지 않는다. naneun gidarineun geoseul joahaji anneunda. "I don't like waiting."
기다리지 말고 먼저 가세요. Gidariji malgo meonjeo gaseyo. "Don't wait for me. Please go first."	어서 들어오세요. eoseo deureo-oseyo. "Please come in quickly."

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

1. 가다 [gada], meaning "to go," vs. 오다 [oda], meaning "to come"

Two of the verbs we use most commonly are 가다, meaning "to go," and 오다, meaning "to come."

Verbs	Verb Stem	Past (+ ㅆ(었/았) 다)	Progressive Present (Verb Stem + 고 있다)	Future (Verb Stem + ㄹ 것 이다)

가다 "to go"	가 + 다	가 + ㅍ(였)다 → 갔(였)다 "went"	가 + 고 있다 → 가고 있다 "is/are going"	가 + ㄹ거야 → 갈 것이다 "will go"
오다 "to come"	오 + 다	오 + ㅍ(였)다 → 왔(였)다 "came"	오 + 고 있다 → 오고 있다 "is/are coming"	오 + ㄹ거야 → 올 것이다 "will come"

For Example:

1. 팀은 어제 회사에 **갔었다**.
Tim-eun eoje hoesa-e gatsseotda.
"Tim **went** to the office yesterday."
2. 데비는 지금 **오고 있다**.
Debi-neun jigeum ogo itda.
"Debbie **is coming** now."
3. 나는 집에 **갈 것이다**.
Naneun jibe gal geosida.
"I **will go** back home!"
4. 나 내일 여기 다시 **올 거야!**
Na nae-il yeogi dasi ol geoya!
"I **will come** back here again tomorrow!"

2. 중독 [*jung-dok*], meaning "an addict"/"addiction"

Korean people often use the word 중독 (*jung-dok*) whenever mentioning that they are "extremely" addicted to something or someone.

- ☞ 중독 (*jung-dok*) is a noun meaning "an addict" or "an addiction"
- ☞ 중독된 (*jung-dok-doen*) is an adjective meaning "addictive"
- ☞ 중독되다 (*jung-dok-doeda*) is a verb meaning "to become/get addicted"

For Example:

1. 카페인 중독

Kapein jung-dok

"A caffeine **addict**"

2. 그는 카페인에 중독되었다.

Geu-neun kapein-e jungdokdoe-eotdda.

"He **became/got addicted** to caffeine."

3. (전화)를 끊다 [(jeonhwa)reul kkeunta] , meaning "to hang up the phone"

When Korean people say "hang up the phone," they use the verb 끊다 (*kkeunta*), meaning "to cut off."

☞ 전화 (*jeon-hwa*) "a phone," "a telephone," "a call"

☞ 끊다 (*kkeunta*) "to cut off," "to switch off," "to hang up," "to get off"

☞ 전화를 끊다 (*jeonhwa-reul kkeunta*) "to hang up the phone"

For Example:

1. 그럼, 이제 그만 전화를 끊겠습니다.

Geu-reom, ije geu-man jeonhwareul kkeunket-seumnida.

"Then I'll hang up the phone now."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is about Verb Stem + (으)ㄴ 테니까 "I will [verb]..., so..."

내가 빨리 갈 테니까 조금만 기다리고 있어.

Naega ppal-ri gal tenikka jogeum-man gidarigo itseo.

I'll be there soon, so just wait a bit.

This Korean construction tells why a speaker actually did (didn't), does (doesn't), or will do (won't do) so: Verb Stem + (으)ㄴ 테니까 "will be ..., so ..."

There are two usages of the expression, -(으)ㄴ 테니까, "I will [verb]..., so...":

1. It is often used / spoken in order to indicate **"a will (an intention)"** when it is used with the subject "I".

2. It is often used / spoken in order to indicate **"future actions/outcomes"** that will **PROBABLY** occur when the subject is someone other than "I".

First, let's learn about its conjugation rule and then take a look at some examples of those two usages.

Conjugation Rule

Rule #1: Verb Stem + ㄹ 테니까: If there is no 받침 (ending in a vowel) or if the adjective or verb stem ends with a ㄹ 받침

Rule #2: Verb Stem + 을 테니까 - If there is a 받침 (ending in a consonant) at the end of

(Rule #1)			
without a 받침 (ending in a <u>vowel</u>)	Verb Stem + ㄹ 테니까	Becomes...	"English"
1. 도와주다 [dowajuda] "to help / to assist"	도와주 + ㄹ 테니까	도와줄 테니까	"I will help, so..."
2. 가다 [gada] "to go"	가 + ㄹ 테니까	갈 테니까	"I will go, so..."
3. 오다 [oda] "to come"	오 + ㄹ 테니까	올 테니까	"I will come, so..."
4. 놀다 [nolda] "to play"	놀 → 노 + ㄹ 테니까	놀 테니까	"I will play, so..."
(Rule #2)			
with a 받침 (ending in a <u>consonant</u>)	Verb Stem + 을 테니까	Becomes...	Translation...
5. 먹다 [meokda] "to eat"	먹 + 을 테니까	먹을 테니까	"I will eat, so..."

6. 넣다 [<i>neo-ta</i>] "to put / to pour"	넣 + 을 테니까	넣을 테니까	"I will pour (it in), so..."
---	-----------	--------	------------------------------

Two usages of S/V + (으)ㄹ 테니까

1. Verb Stem + (으)ㄹ 테니까 indicates **"a will / an intention" when we use it with "I"**

It means "will" when the speaker, "I", is talking about the speaker's own action because the speaker, "I" is sure of it.

For Example:

- 1.
2. 내가 갈 테니까 기다려. [가다 "to go" → 갈 테니까 "I will go, so..."]
Naega gal tenikka gidalryeo.
 "I will be there, so wait (for me)."
3. 내가 (다) 먹을 테니까 많이 시켜도 돼. [먹다 "to eat" → 먹을 테니까 "I will eat, so..."]
Naega (da) meok-eul tenikka mani si-kyeodo doe.
 "I will eat everything, so you can order a lot (of food)."

2. Verb Stem + (으)ㄹ 테니까 indicates **"a prediction," "a factor," "a presumption," or "a guess" when the subject is someone (or something) other than "I."**

It means "probably" because the sentence is talking about other people's actions; so it's more of a "guess/presumption."

For Example:

1. 조만간 비가 올 테니까 우산 가지고 와야해. [(비가) 오다 "to come" → 올 테니까 "The rain is probably coming, so..."]
Jo-man-gan biga ol tenikka u-san gajigo wa-yaha.
 "It's probably going to rain soon, so you should bring an umbrella with you."

2. 아이가 놀 테니까 자리를 비켜주자. [놀다 "to play" → 놀 테니까 "The child is probably going to play (here), so..."]
Ai-ga nol tenikka jarireul bikyoejuja.
 "The child is probably going to play (here), so let's move out of the way."
3. 곧 기름을 다 넣을 테니까 갈 준비를 하자. [넣다 "to put" → 넣을 테니까 "He/she is probably filling up the gas tank, so..."]
Got gireum-eul da neoeul tenikka gal junbireul haja.
 "The car is probably filled up with gas sooner or later, so let's get ready to go."

Examples From This Dialogue:

1. 너한테 갈 테니까 기다리고 있어.
Neohante gal tenikka gidarigo itseo.
 "I will be there soon, so wait for me."
2. 편의점에서 기다릴 테니까 거기서 만날까?
Pyeon-uijeom-eseo gidaril tenikka geogiseo man-nalkka?
 "I will be waiting for you at the convenience store, so should we meet there?"
3. 내가 빨리 갈 테니까 조금만 기다리고 있어.
Naega ppal-li gal tenikka jogeum-man gidarigo itseo.
 "I will be there as soon as possible, so just wait a bit (for me)."
4. 길이 미끄러울 테니까 운전 조심하고!
Giri mikkeureo-ultenikka unjeon josimhago!
 "The roads are probably slippery, so be careful!"
5. 이만 전화 끊을 테니까 어서 오세요.
Iman jeonhwa kkeun-neul tenikka eoseo oseyo.
 "I'm hanging up (the phone) now, so please come."

LESSON NOTES

Lower Intermediate S2 #5

You Might Do This in Korea

CONTENTS

- 2 Korean Hangul
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 8 Grammar

5

KOREAN HANGUL

1. (식당에서)
2. 철수: 와.자장면 세 그릇에 짬뽕 두 그릇이나 먹었는데도 아직도 안 오네.
인제 그만 집에 갈까? 아니야. 이미 네 시간이나 기다렸는데 이 가게
문 닫을 때까지 기다려 볼까? 저기요!
3. 웨이터: 네.
4. 철수: 자장면 한 그릇 더 먹어볼까 하는데요.
5. 웨이터: (놀라며) 네?
6. 철수: 이번에는 자장면 곱빼기로 먹어볼까 해요. '카스 맥주'도 세 병 주세요.
7. 웨이터: 여기 주문하신 자장면 곱빼기하고 맥주 세 병 나왔습니다. 맛있게 드세요.
8. (시간이 지나고..)
9. 철수: 역시 자장면이 최고야! 이제 팀한테 전화해 봐야겠다.
10. (따르릉)
11. 팀: 여보세요. 철수야. 아, 안 그래도 너한테 전화할까 했는데...
12. 철수: 야! 내가 얼마나 기다린 줄 알아? 빨리 와!!

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. (sikdangeseo)
2. CHEOLSU: wa.jajangmyeon se geureuse jjamppong du geureusina
meogeonneundedo ajikdo an one. inje geuman jibe galkka? aniya.
imi ne siganina gidaryeonneunde i gage mun dadeul ttaekkaji
gidaryeo bolkka? jeogiyo!
3. WEITEO: ne.
4. CHEOLSU: jajangmyeon han geureut deo meogeobolkka haneundeyo.
5. WEITEO: (nollamyeo) ne?
6. CHEOLSU: ibeoneneun jajangmyeon goppaegiro meogeobolkka haeyo.
kaseu maekjutdo se byeong juseyo.
7. WEITEO: yeogi jumunhasin jajangmyeon goppaegihago maekju se byeong
nawatseumnida. masitge deuseyo.
8. (sigani jinago..)
9. CHEOLSU: yeoksi jajangmyeoni choegoya! ije timhante jeonhwahae
bwayagetda.
10. (ttareureung)
11. TIM: yeoboseyo. cheolsuya. a, an geuraedo neohante jeonhwahalkka
haenneundett.
12. CHEOLSU: ya! naega eolmana gidarin jul ara? ppalli wa!!

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. (At the restaurant)
2. CHEOLSU: Wow. Even after three bowls of black bean noodles and two bowls of spicy seafood noodles, they're still not here yet. Should I just head home? No. I've been already waiting for four hours. I should wait until the restaurant closes. Excuse me!
3. WAITER: Yes?
4. CHEOLSU: I think I'd like to have another order of black bean noodles...
5. WAITER: (surprised) What?
6. CHEOLSU: I'm thinking about having an extra large bowl of black bean noodles this time. Please bring me three bottles of 'Cass' beer as well.
7. WAITER: Here is an extra large bowl of black bean noodles and three bottles of 'Cass' beer. Enjoy your meal.
8. (Later)
9. CHEOLSU: Black bean noodles really are the best! I should give Tim a call now.
10. (The phone rings.)
11. TIM: Hello. Cheolsu...Ah, I was just thinking about giving you a call.
12. CHEOLSU: Hey! Do you know how long I've been waiting? Hurry up and get over here!

VOCABULARY

Hangul	Romanization	English	Class
인제	inje	now, from now on	adverb
맛있게 드세요.	Masitge deuseyo.	Enjoy your meal.	expression
주문하다	jumunhada	to order, to make an order	verb
세 병	se byeong	three bottles of	phrase
맥주	maekju	beer	noun
곱빼기	goppaegi	double portions, double helpings, extra large (portion)	noun
한 그릇	han geureut	a bowl of	phrase
닫다	datda	to close, to shut	verb
그만	geuman	stop, no more	adverb
최고	choego	(the) best	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

인제 실수 안 할게. Inje silsu an halge. "I won't make a mistake from now on."	여기 있습니다. 맛있게 드세요. Yeogi itseumnida. Masitge deuseyo. "Here is your food. Enjoy your meal."
피자를 주문했는데 아직 안 왔어요. pijareul jumunhaenneunde ajik an wasseoyo. "I ordered a pizza, but it hasn't come yet."	그들은 벌써 세 병의 와인을 마셨다. Geudeureun beolsseo se byeong-ui waineul masyeotda. "They already drank three bottles of wine."

한강변에서 맥주를 마시는 건 정말 좋습니다. hangangbyeoneseo maekjureul masineun geon jeongmal josseumnida. "It is really nice to drink beer near the Han River."	맥주를 마시고 싶다. maekjjureul masigo sippta. "I'd like to have a beer."
한국 사람들은 술집에서 맥주를 마실 때, 김이나 마른오징어를 함께 먹습니다. hanguk saramdeureun suljibeseo maekjjureul masil ttae, gimina mareunojingeoreul hamkke meoksseumnida. "When Korean people drink beer at a bar, they eat dried seaweed or squid together with it."	맥주 마셔. maekju masyeo. "Drink some beer."
나는 짬뽕 곱빼기 먹을거야. Naneun jjamppong goppaegi meogeul-geoya. "I will have an extra large bowl of spicy seafood noodles."	방금 국 한 그릇을 먹었다. Bang-geum guk han geureuseul meogeotda. "I just ate a bowl of soup."
창문 닫아 주세요. changmun dada juseyo. "Please close the window."	그만 좀 놀리세요. geuman jom nolliseyo. "Please stop making fun of me."
우리 엄마 요리가 최고야. uri eomma yori-ga choigo-ya. "My mom's cooking is the best."	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

* Counting Units - 그릇[geu-reut]: "a bowl", 병[byeong]: "a bottle"

These counting units, 그릇 "a bowl" and 병 "a bottle", are followed by 'Native(Pure) Korean Numbers'.

☞ Formation: Native (Pure) Korean Number + Counting Unit (그릇 or 병)

Counting Units	Native (Pure) Korean Number	Native Korean Number + Counting Unit	English Translation
그릇 "a bowl"	셋[seŋ]: "three"	셋 "three" + 그릇 "a bowl" = 세 그릇[se geureot]	"three bowls of..."
병 "a bottle"	다섯[daseot]: "five"	다섯 "five" + 병 "a bottle" = 다섯 병[daseot geureot]	"five bottles of..."

***Note:** from 1 to 4, 하나[hana] → 한[han] "1", 둘[du] → 두[du] "2", 셋[seŋ] → 세[se] "3", and 넷[net] → 네[ne] "4"

For Example:

- 자장면 두 그릇 주세요.
Jajangmyeon du geu-reut juseyo.
"Please give me **two bowls of** black bean noodles."
- 콜라 한 병도 주세요.
Col-ra han byeongdo juseyo.
"Please give me **a bottle of** Coke as well."

*** -ㄹ(을) 때까지 [-l (eul) ttaekkaji]: "until"**

This phrase, -ㄹ(을) 때까지, can be translated as "Until + Subject + Verb" or "Until + Verb-ing"

☞ Formation: Verb Stem + -ㄹ(을) 때까지 "until Subject Verb"

Verb Stem with ending in a vowel (without a 받침)	Verb Stem + ㄹ 때까지	Becomes...	Translation
--	--------------------------	------------	-------------

자다 [jada] "to sleep" (자 + 다)	자 + ㄹ 때까지	잘 때까지 [jal ttaekkaji]	"until (subject) is sleeping... / until (subject) sleeps..."
기다리다 [gidarida] "to wait" (기다리 + 다)	기다리 + ㄹ 때까지	기다릴 때까지 [gidaril ttaekkaji]	"until (subject) is waiting... / until (subject) waits..."

Verb Stem with ending in a consonant (with a 받침)	Verb Stem + 을 때까지	Becomes...	Translation
닫다 [datda] "to close" (닫 + 다)	닫 + 을 때까지	닫을 때까지 [daldeul ttaekkaji]	"until (noun) is closing... / until (noun) closes..."
죽다 [jukda] "to die" (죽 + 다)	죽 + 을 때까지	죽을 때까지 [jugeul ttaekkaji]	"until (noun) is dying... / until (noun) dies..."

For Example:

- 나는 팀이 잘 때까지 기다릴거야!
Naneun tim-i jal ttaekkaji gidarilgeoya!
"I will wait until Tim goes to sleep!"
- 가게 문 닫을 때까지 기다려 볼까?
Gage mun dadeul ttaekkaji gidaryeo bolkka?
"Should I wait until the store closes?"

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is about Verb Stem + ㄹ(을)까 하다 : "thinking of doing, thinking about doing, thinking (I) might ~"

자장면 한 그릇 더 먹어볼까 하는데...

Jajangmyeon han geureut deo meogeobolkka haneunde...

"I am thinking of having another order of black bean noodles..."

This pattern is used / said to politely suggest the speaker's intention of doing something:
Verb Stem + ㄹ(을)까 하다 "Thinking of doing..."

This grammar (expression), - ㄹ(을)까 하다, is used when considering "an act" that will take place in the near future.

Let's have a look at its conjugation rules and some examples.

Conjugation Rule

(Rule #1): V/S + ㄹ까 하다 - If there is **no 받침** (ending in a vowel) or if the adjective/verb stem ends with a ㄹ 받침

(Rule #2): V/S + 을까 하다 - If there is **a 받침** (ending in a consonant) at the end of the adjective/verb stem

(Rule #1) no 받침 (ending in a vowel)	Verb Stem + ㄹ까 하 다	Becomes...	Translation
1. 보다 [boda] "to see / to watch"	볼 + ㄹ까 하다	볼까 하다 [bolkka hada]	"thinking of seeing... / thinking about watching..."
2. 마시다 [masida] "to drink"	마시 + ㄹ까 하다	마실까 하다 [masilkka hada]	"thinking of drinking... / thinking about drinking..."

3. 운전하다 [<i>un-jeonhada</i>] "to drive"	운전하 + ㄹ까 하다	운전할까 하다 [<i>unjeonhalkka hada</i>]	"thinking of driving... / thinking about driving..."
4. 밀다 [<i>milda</i>] "to push"	밀 → 미 + ㄹ까 하다	밀까 하다 [<i>milkkahada</i>]	"thinking of pushing... / thinking about pushing..."

(Rule #2)

with a 받침 (ending in a consonant)

Verb Stem + **을까 하다**

Becomes...

Translation

5. 닫다 [<i>dat-da</i>] "to close"	닫 + 을까 하다	닫을까 하다 [<i>dadeulkka hada</i>]	"thinking of closing... / thinking about closing..."
6. 읽다 [<i>ik-da</i>] "to read"	읽 + 을까 하다	읽을까 하다 [<i>ilgeulkka hada</i>]	"thinking of reading... / thinking about reading..."
7. 먹다 [<i>meok-da</i>] "to eat/have"	먹 + 을까 하다	먹을까 하다 [<i>meogeulkka hada</i>]	"thinking of eating... / thinking about having..."

For Example:

1. 이 영화를 볼까 하는데... 넌 어때?
*I yeonghwa-reul **bol-kka ha-neunde**... Neon eo-ttae?*
 "I am **thinking of watching** this movie... How about you?"
2. 소주를 마실까 하는데요...
*Soju-reul **masilkka haneundeyo**...*
 "I am **thinking about drinking** soju (Korean hard liquor)..."
3. 내가 운전할까 하는데, 찬성이야?
*Naega **un-jeonhalkka haneunde**, chan-seong-iya?*
 "I am **thinking of driving** this car. Do you agree?"
4. 이 차를 밀까 하는데, 좀 도와주실래요?
*I cha-reul **milkka haneunde**, jom do-wa-jusilraeyo?*
 "I am **thinking of pushing** this car. Can you give me a hand?"
5. 이제 그만 가게 문을 닫을까 하는데요...
*I-je geu-man gage muneul **da-deulkka haneundeyo**...*
 "I am **thinking of closing** the store now..."
6. 신문을 읽을까 하는데, 넌 어떻게 생각해?
*Sinmuneul **ilgeulkka haneunde**, neon eotteoke saeng-gake?*
 "I am **thinking of reading** a newspaper. What do you think?"
7. 비빔밥을 먹을까 하는데, 어때요? 맛있어요?
*Bibimbab-eul **meogeulkka haneunde**, eo-ttaeyo? Masisseoyo?*
 "I am **thinking of having** the bibimbab. How is it? Is it good?"

Examples From This Dialogue:

-
1. 자장면 한 그릇 더 먹어볼까 하는데요...
Jajangmyeon han geureut deo meogeobolkka haneundeyo...
 "I think I'd like to have another order of black bean noodles..."

2. 안 그래도 너한테 전화할까 했는데...

An geuraedo neohate jeonhwahalkka haetneunde...

"I was just thinking about giving you a call..."

LESSON NOTES

Lower Intermediate S2 #6

How to Be a Good Friend in Korea

CONTENTS

- 2 Korean Hangul
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 5 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 7 Grammar

6

KOREAN HANGUL

1. (식당에서)
2. 팀: 내가 너무 늦었지, 미안! 헉! 너 이거 혼자 다 먹은 거야? 자장면 네 그릇에 짬뽕 두 그릇?
3. 철수: 하나는 곱빼기야! 말 돌리지 말고! 너 친구로서 그러는 거 아니다! 네 시간이나 기다렸어.
4. 팀: 너의 절친으로서 할 말이 없다. 미안.
5. 철수: 그렇지!? 친구로서 적어도 전화는 해 줘야지...지금까지 이것들을 먹음으로써 널 기다릴 수 있었어. 흑흑흑.
6. 팀: 그래. 자장면 네 그릇에 짬뽕 두 그릇.
7. 철수: 하나는 곱빼기라니까!!
8. 팀: 그래, 곱빼기... 알았어. 내가 무엇을 함으로써 너를 달랠 수 있을까?
9. 철수: 자장면 네 그릇하고 짬뽕 두 그릇하고 맥주 세 병을 계산함으로써...
10. 팀: 다?
11. 철수: 왜? 싫어?
12. 팀: 아..냐..내가 계산할게.
13. 철수: 역시 넌 친구로서 관찮은 놈이야! 나가자!

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. (sikdangeseo)
2. TIM: naega neomu neujeotji, mian! heok! neo igeo honja da meogeun geoya? jajangmyeon ne geureuse jjamppong du geureut?
3. CHEOLSU: hananeun goppaegiya! mal dolliji malgo! neo chinguroseo geureoneun geo anida! ne siganina gidaryeoseo.
4. TIM: neoui jeolchineuroseo hal mari eopda. mian.
5. CHEOLSU: geureochi!? chinguroseo jeogeodo jeonhwaneunhae jwoseoyaji.. jigeumkkaji igeotdeureul meogeumeurosseo neol gidaril su isseosseo. heukheukheuk.
6. TIM: geurae. jajangmyeon ne geureuse jjamppong du geureut.
7. CHEOLSU: hananeun goppaegiranikka!!
8. TIM: geurae, goppaegi..arasseo. naega mueoseul hameurosseo neoreul dallael su iseulkka?
9. CHEOLSU: jajangmyeon ne geureutago jjamppong du geureutago maekju se byeongeul gyesanhameurosseo...
10. TIM: da?
11. CHEOLSU: wae? sireo?
12. TIM: a..nya..naega gyesanhalge.
13. CHEOLSU: yeoksi neon chinguroseo gwaenchaneun nomiya! nagaja!

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. (at the restaurant)
2. TIM: I'm so sorry for being late! What! You ate everything by yourself—four bowls of black bean noodles and two bowls of spicy seafood noodles?
3. CHEOL-SU: One was an extra large bowl, and don't change the subject! This is not how you treat a friend! I've been waiting for (as long as) four hours.
4. TIM: I have nothing to say to you as your best friend. I'm sorry!
5. CHEOL-SU: Right? As your friend, the least you could have done was given me a call. The only way I could wait for so long was by eating. (Sobs).
6. TIM: I know. Four bowls of black bean noodles and two bowls of spicy seafood noodles.
7. CHEOL-SU: One was an extra large bowl!
8. TIM: I see.one was an extra large bowl. What can I do to make you feel better?
9. CHEOL-SU: By paying for everything—four bowls of black bean noodles, two bowls of spicy seafood noodles, and three bottles of beer.
10. TIM: Everything?
11. CHEOL-SU: Why? You don't want to?
12. TIM: No. It's okay.I will pay for everything.

CONT'D OVER

13. CHEOL-SU: You're a good guy to have as a friend! Let's go!

VOCABULARY

Hangul	Romanization	English	Class
헉!	Heok	Oh my!, What!, Oh no!	onomatopoeia
달래다	dalraeda	to soothe	verb
계산하다	gyesanhada	to pay a bill, to calculate	verb
나가다	nagada	to go out, to go outside	verb
놈	nom	guy, thing, one	noun
할 말이 없다.	Hal mari eopda.	I have nothing to say.	expression
역시	yeoksi	as expected, surely	adverb
적어도	jeogeodo	at least	adverb
너무	neomu	very, very much so	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

헉! 나 숙제하는 거 까먹었어. Heok! Na sukjehaneun geo kkameogeotsseo. "Oh no! I forgot to do my homework."	엄마는 우는 아이를 달래고 있었다. Eom-maneun uneun aireul dalraego itseotda. "The mother was trying to soothe her crying child."
그녀가 계산할 거야. Geunyeoga gyesanhal geoya. "She will pay this for you."	먼저 나가세요. meonjeo nagaseyo. "Please go outside first."

그는 나쁜 놈이다. Geuneun napeun nomida. "He is a bad guy."	더 이상 할 말이 없어. Deo isang hal mari eopseo. "I have nothing more to say."
역시나 니 말이 옳았어. yeoksina ni mal-i orasseo. "Just as I expected, you were right."	여기서 적어도 한 시간은 걸릴거야. yeo-gi-seo jeok-eo-do han si-gan-eun geol-ril-geo-ya. "It will take at least an hour from here."
거실이 너무 좁아요. geosiri neomu jobayo. "The living room is too small."	가방이 너무 무거워요. gabangi neomu mugeowoyo. "The bag is too heavy."

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

1. 말 돌리다 [*mal dol-lida*] "to change / switch the subject"

말 돌리다 [*mal dol-lida*] is often used/said to describe someone trying to change the topic/subject (because he/she feels guilty of his/her behavior).

- 말 [*mal*] "the topic / subject"
- 돌리다 [*dol-lida*] "to convert / change / switch"
- Therefore, 말 돌리다 [*mal dol-lida*] means "to change/switch the subject"

For Examples:

- 말 돌리지 마!
Mal dol-liji ma!
"Don't change the subject!"
- (이리저리) 말 돌리지 말고 사실대로 말해.
(I-ri-jeo-ri) mal dol-liji malgo sasildaero malhae.
"Stop changing the subject, and just tell me the truth."

2. 절친 [*jeol-chin*] "a great (best) friend"

절친 [*jeol-chin*] is a shortened word (noun) that comes from 절친한 친구 [*jeolchinhhan chingu*] = 절친 [*jeol-chin*] "a great (best) friend."

- 절친한 [jeolchinhhan] is an adjective "close," "great," "best"
- 친구 [chin-gu] is a noun "a friend"
- Therefore, 절친한 친구 [jeolchinhhan chin-gu] = 절친 [jeol-chin] "a great (best) friend"

For Example:

1. 그들은 절친한 사이다.
Geudeul-eun jeol-chinhhan sa-i-da.
"They are so close (great) to each other."
2. 팀과 철수는 절친이야.
Tim-gwa Cheol-su-neun jeolchin-iya.
"Tim and Cheol-su are inseparable."

3. 할 말이 없다 [hal mal-i eopda] "have nothing to say to [with]"

- 할 말 [hal mal] "something to say"
- (이) 있다 / 없다 [- (i) it-ta/eop-ta] "there is / there is NOT"
- 할 말이 있다 [hal mal-i it-ta] "there is something to say"
- 할 말이 없다 [hal mal-i eop-ta] "there is nothing to say"

For Example:

1. 너(당신)한테 할 말이 있어요.
Neo(dang-sin)hante hal mal-i it-seoyo.
"I have something to say to you."
2. 너(당신)한테 할 말이 없어요.
Neo(dang-sin)hante hal mal-i eopseoyo.
"I have nothing to say to you."
3. (나) 변명할 것이 있어 = 할 말이 있어.
(Na) byeonmyeonghal geosi it-seo = hal mal-i itseo.
"I have something to say (for oneself)."
4. (나) 변명할 것이 없어 = 할 말이 없어.
(Na) byeonmyeonghal geosi it-seo = hal mal-i eopseo.
"I have nothing to say (for oneself)."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the Construction Noun + (으)로서 (an Indicator of Social Position/Qualifications)

너의 절친으로서 할 말이 없다.

Neo-ui jeolchin-euroseo hal mari eopda.

"I have nothing to say to you as a best friend."

Noun + (으)로서 [(eu)roseo]: Is an Adverb Marker We Use to Indicate the Social Definition, Status, Position, and Authority of Someone

We often use the pattern [the status or social definition of someone] + (으)로서, to establish a person's social position, qualifications, or authority.

Let's take a look at its conjugation rules and some example sentences.

Conjugation Rules

(Rule #1): Noun + 로서 - If there is **no 받침** (ending in a vowel) or if the noun ends with a **ㄹ 받침**

(Rule #2): Noun + 으로서 - If there is a **받침** (ending in a consonant) at the end of the noun

For Example:

(Rule #1)

No 받침 (ending in
a vowel)

Noun + 로서

Becomes...

Translation...

1. 친구 [chin-gu]

"a friend"

친구 + 로서

친구로서 [chin-gu-

rosseo]

"As a friend..."

2. 부모 [bu-mo] "parents"	부모 + 로서	부모로서 [bu-mo-rosseo]	"As parents..."
(Rule #2) with a 받침 (ending in a consonant)			
	Noun + 으로서	Becomes...	Translation...
3. 사람 [sa-ram] "a human being"	사람 + 으로서	사람으로서 [sa-ram-euroseo]	"As a human being..."
4. 자식 [ja-sik] "a child / children"	자식 + 으로서	자식으로서 [ja-sik-euroseo]	"As a child / as children"

*Note: Verb Stem + ㅁ(으)로써 [*m(eu)-rosseo*]: is an adverb marker we use to indicate the purpose, method, or tool used for doing something.

For Example:

1. 함으로써
hameuroseo
"by doing"
2. 먹음으로써
meogeumeuroseo
"by eating"
3. 공부함으로써
gongbuhameuroseo
"by studying"

For more information on 'VST + (으)로써', please see **Lower Intermediate Season 2 Lesson 24**.

For Example:

1. 넌 친구로서 최고야!
 Neon chin-gu-roseo choe-goya!
 "As a friend, you're the best!"
2. 우리는 부모로서 최선을 다해야 합니다.
 Urineun bu-mo-roseo choeseoneul dahaeya hamnida.
 "We need to do our best as parents."
3. 우리는 사람으로서 질서를 지켜야 합니다.
 Urineun sa-ram-euroseo jilseoreul jikyeoya hamnida.
 "We should keep public order as human beings."
4. 사람은 자식으로서 할 일을 알아야 합니다.
 Saramleun jasigeuroseo hal ireul araya hamnida.
 "People should know what to do as one's sons and daughters."

Examples from This Dialogue

1. 너 친구로서 그러는 거 아니다!
 Neo chin-guroseo geureoneun geo anida!
 "This is not how you treat a friend!"
2. 너의 절친으로서 할 말이 없다.
 Neo-ui jeolchin-euroseo hal mari eopda.
 "I have nothing to say (to you) as a close friend."
3. 친구로서 적어도 전화는 해 줘야지...
 Chin-guroseo jeogeodo jeonhwaneun hae jwosseoyaji...
 "As your friend, the least you could have done was given me a call..."
4. 역시 넌 친구로서 괜찮은 놈이야!
 Yeoksi neon chingu-roseo gwonchaneun nomiya!
 "You're a good guy to have as a friend!"

LESSON NOTES

Lower Intermediate S2 #7

Despite Your Lateness, We Can Still Be Friends in Korea

CONTENTS

- 2 Korean Hangul
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 5 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 7 Grammar

#7

KOREAN HANGUL

1. 팀: 수진아! 여기야! 비 많이 온다. 빨리 타.
2. 수진: 와. 비가 이렇게 오는데도 불구하고 빨리 왔네! 어? 철수도 있네!
3. 철수: (코를 골며) 드르렁. 드르렁.
4. 팀: 철수는 잠들었어. 글썄, 내가 많이 늦었는데도 불구하고 기다리고 있더라고.
5. 철수: (잠꼬대하며) "아니. 짬뽕 말고 자장면!"
6. 수진: 하하! 잠꼬대도 하네.
7. 팀: 철수 요즘에 굉장히 바쁘다던데... 그럼에도 불구하고 나를 네 시간이 나 기다린 거 보면 참 괜찮은 애야.
8. 수진: 근데, 철수는 뭐하면서 너를 기다리고 있었어?
9. 팀: 글썄 자장면 세 그릇에 짬뽕 두 그릇 그리고 자장면 곱빼기까지 추가해서 먹고 있더라고.
10. 수진: 뭐?? 자장면 세 그릇하고 짬뽕 두 그릇을 먹었는데도 불구하고 자장면 곱빼기까지! 와. 정말 대단하다!
11. 철수: (잠꼬대하며) 여기 자장면 곱빼기 추가요!
12. 수진: 하하하. 아직도 잠꼬대하네!

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. TIM: sujina! yeogiya! bi mani onda. ppalli ta.
2. SUJIN: wa. biga ireoke oneundedo bulguhago ppalli wanne! eo?
cheolsudo inne!
3. CHEOLSU: (koreul golmyeo) deureureong. deureureong.
4. TIM: cheolsuneun jamdeureosseo. geulsse, naega mani
neujeonneundedo bulguhago gidarigo itdeorago.
5. CHEOLSU: (jamkkodaehamyeo) "ani. jjamppong malgo jajangmyeon!"
6. SUJIN: haha! jamkkodaedo hane.
7. TIM: cheolsu yojeume goengjanghi bappeudadeondett geureomedo
bulguhago nareul ne siganina gidarin geo bomyeon cham
gwaenchaneun aeya.
8. SUJIN: geunde, cheolsuneun mwohamyeonseo neoreul gidarigo iseoseo?
9. TIM: geulsse jajangmyeon se geureuse jjamppong du geureut geurigo
jajangmyeon goppaegikkaji chugahaeseo meokgo itdeorago.
10. SUJIN: mwo?? jajangmyeon se geureutago jjamppong du geureuseul
meogeonneundedo bulguhago jajangmyeon goppaegikkaji! wa.
jeongmal daedanhada!
11. CHEOLSU: (jamkkodaehamyeo) yeogi jajangmyeon goppaegi chugayo!
12. SUJIN: hahaha. ajikdo jamkkodaehane!

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. TIM: Su-jin! Over here! It's pouring rain. Hurry up and get in!
2. SU-JIN: Wow. You came earlier despite the heavy rain! Eh? Cheol-su is here, too!
3. CHEOL-SU: (heavily snores)
4. TIM: Cheol-su fell asleep. In fact, he was waiting for me despite the fact that I was so late.
5. CHEOL-SU: (Talking in his sleep) No, I ordered black bean noodles, not spicy seafood noodles!
6. SU-JIN: Ha ha! He's even talking in his sleep.
7. TIM: I heard Cheol-su's extremely busy these days. Despite that, he waited for me for over four hours; he's a good guy.
8. SU-JIN: By the way, what was he doing while he was waiting for you?
9. TIM: Well, he was eating three bowls of black bean noodles, two bowls of spicy seafood noodles, and he even ordered an extra large bowl of black bean noodles on top of that.
10. SU-JIN: What? He ordered an extra large bowl of black bean noodles even after he ate three bowls of black bean noodles and two bowls of spicy seafood noodles! Wow. That's amazing!
11. CHEOL-SU: (talking in his sleep) I'd like to add an extra large bowl of black bean noodles to my order!

CONT'D OVER

VOCABULARY

Hangul	Romanization	English	Class
타다	ta-da	to ride	verb
참	cham	very, quite	adverb
굉장히	goengjanghi	very, very much	adverb
아직	ahjik, ajik	still	adjective, adverb
잠들다	jamdeulda	to fall asleep	verb
요즘	yojeum	these days, currently	adverb
괜찮다	gwaenchanhta	to be okay, to be all right (to deny an offer)	adjective
코를 골다	Koreul golda	to snore	phrase
이렇게	ireoke	like this, in this way	adverb
까지	kkaji	until, even, up to	postposition

SAMPLE SENTENCES

그는 버스를 탑니다. Geuneun beoseureul tamnida. "He rides the bus."	그 여자는 눈이 참 예뻐. geu yeoja-neun nun-i cham yeppeo. "She has really beautiful eyes."
아이들은 참 단순해요. aideul-eun cham dansunhaeyo. "Children are very simple."	고래는 굉장히 똑똑하다고 들었어요. gorae-neun goengjang-hi ttokttokhadago deureosseoyo. "I've heard that whales are very smart."

1년이 지난 후에도 아직 내가 무엇을 하고 있는지 모르겠다. ilnyeoni jinan huedo ajik naega mueoseul hago inneunji moreugetda. "After one year, I still have no idea what I'm doing."	팀도 심하게 코를 골아! Timdo simhage koreul gola! "Tim also snores heavily!"
3분만에 잠들었어요. sam-bun-man-e jamdeureosseoyo. "I fell asleep within three minutes."	요즘 날씨 어때요? yojeum nalssi eottaeyo? "How's the weather these days?"
요즘 뭐해? yojeum mwohae? "What are you doing these days?"	제 그림인데, 괜찮아요? je geurimindae gwenchanayo? "This is my drawing, but is it ok?"
창문 열어도 괜찮아요? changmun yeoreodo gwaenchanayo? "May I open the window?"	괜찮아. 어렵지 않아. gwaenchana. eoryeopji ana. "It's okay. It's not hard."
팀도 심하게 코를 골아! Timdo simhage koreul gola! "Tim also snores heavily!"	이렇게 따라 하세요. ireoke ttara haseyo. "Do it like this."
승합차이니까 8명까지 탈 수 있어요. Seunghapchainikka yeodeolmyeongkkaji tal ssu isseoyo. "Since it's a van, up to eight people can ride it."	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

* 잠꼬대 [*jam-ggo-dae*] "sleep-talking / talking in one's sleep"

잠꼬대 [*jam-ggo-dae*] is a noun that means "sleep-talking;" to convert it into a verb describing someone "talking in his/her sleep," add 하다 [*hada*] "to do" after 잠꼬대.

- 잠꼬대 [*jam-ggo-dae*] "sleep-talking"

- 잠꼬대(를) + 하다 [*hada*] "to do" = 잠꼬대(를) 하다 "to sleep-talk = to talk in his/her sleep"

For Example:

1. 팀봐, 잠꼬대 하네!
Timbwa, jam-ggo-dae hane!
"Look at Tim. He talks in his sleep!"
2. 잠꼬대 하는 사람들은 저기서 자세요!
Jam-ggo-dae ha-neun saramdeuleun jeogiseo jaseyo!
"Those who talk in their sleep should sleep over there!"

* 추가요! [*chu-gayo*] "adding to one's order"

추가 [*chu-ga*] is a noun that literally means "addition," however, the phrase, 추가요 [*chu-gayo*] "adding to one's order" is often used/said in any Korean restaurant when customers want to add something to the previous order.

- 추가 [*chu-ga*] "addition"
- 추가요 [*chu-gayo*] "adding to one's order"
- 추가하다 [*chu-ga-hada*] "to add to one's order"

***Common Expression:** 여기 [*yeogi*] "here" + [noun(s)] "a name of dish" + 추가요 [*chu-gayo*] = 여기 음식 추가요 "Please add [the name of dish] to my order".

For Example:

1. 여기 자장면 추가요!
Yeogi jajangmyeon chu-gayo!
"I'd like to add black bean noodles to my order!"
2. 여기 비빔밥 추가요!
Yeogi Bi-bim-bab chu-gayo!
"I'd like to add Korean mixed rice to my order!"
3. (웨이터/웨이트레스): 또 추가하실 것은 없습니까?
(We-i-teo/we-i-teureseu): tto chu-ga-hasil geoseun eopseumnikka?
"(Waiter/Waitress): "Do you have anything else to add to your order?"

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is -(에도) 불구하고... "in Spite of...," "Despite the Fact That..."

비가 이렇게 오는데도 불구하고 빨리 왔네!

Biga ireoke oneundedo bulguhago ppalri watne!

"You came earlier despite all the heavy rain!"

-에도 불구하고... (-*edo bulguhago*) "in Spite of...," 그럼에도 불구하고... (*geureomedo bulguhago*) "Despite the Fact That..."

This expression, -에도 불구하고... (-*edo bulguhago*), is originally NOT from Korean but is actually from the English expression "in spite of..."

We can translate this expression as "nevertheless," "even if"/"even though...," and "although..."

One of the most common expressions would be 그럼에도 불구하고 (*geureomedo bulguhago*), which means "nevertheless" or "despite the fact that..."

Let's take a look at its conjugation rule first...

Conjugation Rule

Present/Past Verb Stem + 는데도 불구하고 (*neundedo bulguhago*) "in spite of [verb + ing]" or "despite the fact that [subject + verb]"

Present/ Past Verb Stem	Verb Stem + 는데 도 불구하고	Becomes...	"English"
1. 오다 (<i>oda</i>) "to come"	오 + 는데도 불구하고	오는데도 불구하고...	"in spite of coming..."
2. 왔다 (<i>watda</i>) "came"	왔 + 는데도 불구하고	왔는데도 불구하고...	"even if it came..."

3. 가다 (<i>gada</i>) "to go"	가 + 는데도 불구하고	가는데도 불구하고...	"in spite of going..."
4. 갔다 (<i>gatda</i>) "went"	갔 + 는데도 불구하고	갔는데도 불구하고...	"although he/she went"
5. 먹다 (<i>meokda</i>) "to eat"	먹 + 는데도 불구하고	먹는데도 불구하고...	"in spite of eating..."
6. 먹었다 (<i>meogeotdda</i>) "ate"	먹었 + 는데도 불구하고	먹었는데도 불구하고...	"although he/she ate..."

For Example:

1. 선생님이 **오는데도 불구하고** 팀은 계속 잔다. (오다 "to come" → 오는데도 불구하고)
Seonsaengnimi o-neundedo bulguhago Timeun gyesok janda.
"Tim keeps sleeping even though his teacher is approaching (coming toward) him."
2. 친구가 **왔는데도 불구하고** 팀은 계속 영화를 봤다. (왔다 "has come" → 왔는데도 불구하고)
Chinguga watneundedo bulguhago Timeun gyesok yeonghwareul bonda.
"Tim continued watching a movie even though his friend came."
3. 여행을 **가는데도 불구하고** 기분이 안 좋아... (가다 "to go" → 가는데도 불구하고)
Yohaengeul ganeundedo bulguhago gibuni an joa...
"I'm not in a good mood even though I am going on a trip."
4. 버스가 **갔는데도 불구하고** 팀은 계속 기다리고 있었다. (갔다 "went" → 갔는데도 불구하고)
Beoseuga gatneundedo bulguhago Timeun gyesok gidarigo isseotta.
"Tim continued to wait even though he missed the bus."
5. 밥을 **먹는데도 불구하고** 과자를 먹는구나! (먹다 "to eat" → 먹는데도 불구하고)
Babeul meokneundedo bulguhago gwajareul meokneunguna!
"(You) keep eating snacks even when you are eating a meal!"
6. 밥을 **먹었는데도 불구하고** 배가 아직도 고파! (먹었다 "ate" → 먹었는데도 불구하고)
Babeul meogeotneundedo bulguhago baega gopa!
"(I) still feel hungry even though I just ate a meal!"

1. 비가 이렇게 오는데도 불구하고 빨리 왔네!
Biga ireoke oneundedo bulguhago ppalri watne!
"You came earlier despite the heavy rain!"
2. 내가 많이 늦었는데도 불구하고 기다리고 있더라고.
Naega mani neujeotneun-dedo bulguhago gyesok gidarigo itdeorago.
"He was waiting for me despite the fact that I was so late."
3. 그럼에도 불구하고 나를 네 시간이나 기다린 거 보면 참 괜찮은 애야.
Geureomedo bulguhago nareul ne sigan-ina gidarin geo bomyeon cham gwoenchaneun ae-ya.
"Despite that, he waited for me for over four hours; he's a good guy."
4. 자장면 세 그릇하고 짬뽕 두 그릇을 먹었는데도 불구하고 자장면 곱빼기까지!!?
Jajangmyeon se geureut-hago jjamppong du geureuseul meogeotneundedo bulguhago jajangmyeon goppaegikkaji!?
"He ordered an extra large bowl of black bean noodles even after he ate three bowls of black bean noodles and two bowls of spicy seafood noodles!"

LESSON NOTES

Lower Intermediate S2 #8

I Don't Mind Where We Go in Korea

CONTENTS

- 2 Korean Hangul
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 7 Grammar
- 12 Cultural Insight

8

KOREAN HANGUL

1. 수진: 우리 이제 어디 가는 거야?
2. 팀: 어디 가고 싶은데 있어?
3. 수진: 난 산이나 바다나 상관없어.
4. 팀: 그럼, 우리 철수한테 물어볼까? 철수야.
5. 철수: (코를 골며) 드르렁. 드르렁.
6. 팀: 아직도 자네. 그럼, 일단 휴게소에 가서 뭐 좀 마시면서 같이 이야기 해 보자!
7. 수진: 그래!
8. 팀: 내가 마실 것 좀 사가지고 올게. 수진아. 뭐 마실래?
9. 수진: 난 사과 주스나 오렌지 주스.
10. 팀: 철수 너는?
11. 철수: 우리 배고픈데 자장면이나 먹을까?
12. 팀: 하하. 철수. 너는 우선 잠부터 깨야 하니까 커피나 마셔. 수진아. 너는 사과 주스나 오렌지 주스 둘 중에 하나 사 올게.

ROMANIZATION

1. SUJIN: uri ije eodi ganeun geoya?

CONT'D OVER

2. TIM: eodi gago sipeunde isseo?
3. SUJIN: nan sanina badana sanggwaneopseo.
4. TIM: geureom, uri cheolsuhante mureobolkka? cheolsuya.
5. CHEOLSU: deureureong. deureureong.
6. TIM: ajikdo jane. geureom, ildan hyugesoe gaseo mwo jom masimyeonseo gachi iyagihae boja!
7. SUJIN: geurae!
8. TIM: naega masil geot jom sa gajigo olge. sujina. mwo masillae?
9. SUJIN: nan sagwa juseuna orenji juseu.
10. TIM: cheolsu neoneun?
11. CHEOLSU: uri baegopeunde jajangmyeonina meogeulkka?
12. TIM: haha. cheolsu. neoneun useon jambuteo kkaeya hanikka keopina masyeo. sujina. neoneun sagwa juseuna orenji juseu dul junge hana sa olge.

ENGLISH

1. SU-JIN: Where are we going now?
2. TIM: Is there any specific place you'd like to go to?

CONT'D OVER

3. SU-JIN: I don't mind if we go to either a mountain or the beach.
4. TIM: Then, why don't we ask Cheol-su? Hey Cheol-su!
5. CHEOL-SU: (keeps snoring)
6. TIM: He's still sleeping. Then why don't we first go to a rest stop, get something to drink, and talk it over.
7. SU-JIN: That sounds good!
8. TIM: I will go and get some drinks. What do you want to drink, Su-jin?
9. SU-JIN: I want either apple juice or orange juice.
10. TIM: What about you, Cheol-su?
11. CHEOL-SU: I feel a bit hungry. Why don't we get a bowl of black bean noodles or something?
12. TIM: Haha. Cheol-su, first you need to drink coffee or something that will help you wake up. I will get either apple juice or orange juice for you, Sujin.

VOCABULARY

Hangul	Romanization	English	Class
물어보다	mureoboda	to ask	verb
사 오다	sa oda	to get, to buy and come back (literally)	verb

우선	useon	first of all, before anything	adverb
배고프다	baegopeuda	to be hungry	verb
마실 것	masil geot	beverage, drink	phrase
휴게소	hyugeso	rest stop, rest area	noun
좀	jom	a bit, a little (sometimes a speech softener)	adverb
아직	ajik	not yet, still	adverb
상관없다	Sang-gwan-eop-da	I don't mind. I don't care. It doesn't matter.	expression
(잠에서) 깨다	(Jameseo) kkaeda	to wake up	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

하나만 물어봐도 돼요? hana-man mureobwado dwaeyo? "Can I ask you a question?"	우리 설탕 다 떨어졌어. 슈퍼마켓에서 설탕 사 올게. Uri seoltang da tteoreojyeotseo. Syupeomakeseseo seoltang sa olge. "We ran out of sugar. I will get some at the market."
우선 이것부터 읽어보세요. useon igeot-buteo ilgeo boseyo. "Please read this first."	오늘 아침을 빨리 먹어서 배고파요. oneul achim-eul ppalli meogeoseo baegopayo. "I had an early breakfast this morning, so I'm hungry."
마실 것 좀 가지고 올게. Masil geot jom gajigo olge. "I will go and get some drinks."	휴게소에서 뭐 좀 먹고 가자. Hyugeso-eseo mwo jom meokgo gaja. "Let's have a bite to eat at the rest area."

안내 좀 해 줘. annae jom hae jweo. "Show me around a bit."	아직 자요? ajik jayo? "Are you still sleeping?"
상관없어. 너 하고 싶은 대로 해! Sang-gwan-eopseo. Neo hago sipeun daero hae! "I don't mind. Have it your own way!"	수탉이 울었을 때, 저는 잠에서 깰 것입니다. sutaki ureosseul ttae, jeoneun jameseo kkael geosimnida. "When the rooster crows, I will wake up."

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

1. 상관없다 [*sang-gwan-eopda*] "It doesn't matter" or "I don't care"

상관없다 is a verb that means "it doesn't matter;" this word is a combination of 상관 [*sang-gwan*] "correlation" and 없다 [*eopda*] "there isn't;" therefore, it can be said that 상관이 없다 [*sang-gwani eopda*] means "there isn't a correlation."

- 상관 [*sang-gwan*] is a noun meaning "correlation, relationship, connection"
- 없다 [*eopda*] means "there is NOT," "have no...," "be without"
- Therefore, 상관없다 [*sang-gwan-eopda*] means "there is no correlation," "have no relation" which can translate as "I don't care" or "It doesn't matter."

For Example:

- 상관이 있다.
Sang-gwani itda.
"There is a correlation / connection."
- 상관이 없다.
Sang-gwani eopda.
"There is NOT any correlation / connection."
- 누가 이기든 (간에) 나하고는 상관없어.
Nuga i-gideun (gane) nahagoneun sang-gwan-eopsseo.
"Whoever wins, it doesn't matter to me (= I don't care)."

2. 일단 (or 우선) [*ildan (u-seon)*] "First of all," "to begin with," "before everything"

일단 (or 우선) is an adverb that means "to begin with" (or "before everything"). Let's take a look at some synonyms.

- 일단은 (or 우선은) [*ildaleun (u-seoneun)*] "first of all"
- 먼저 [*meonjeo*] "first"

For Example:

1. 일단 이것부터 하자.
Ildan igeotbuteo haja.
"Let's do this first."
2. 우선 먼저 가세요...
U-seon meonjeo gaseyo...
"You may go first..."

3. 둘 중에(서) [*dul jung-e(seo)*] "between two"

- 중에서 [*jung-eseo*] means "between," "among," "out of" which is often used when expressing one's choice out of many options.

For Example:

1. 이 둘 중에서 하나 골라봐!
I dul jung-eseo hana gol-rabwa!
"I'll let you choose (one) between these two!"
2. 자... 셋 중에서 골라!
Ja... set jung-eseo gol-ra!
"Hmm...Make your choice among these three!"
3. 열 개 중에서 하나만 고르세요.
Yeol gae jung-eseo hanaman goreuseyo.
"Please choose only one out of the ten."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is about (이)나 That We Use When Expressing Listing Nouns (= Choices/Options) and a Lack of Preference.

Nan san-ina badana sang-gwan-eopsseo.

난 산이나 바다나 상관없어.

"I don't mind if we go to either a mountain or the beach."

Noun + (이)나 [(i)na]: there are many usages of (이)나 in Korean.

This expression, noun + (이)나, has two main usages:

1. to list nouns (= choices or options)
2. to not discriminate between things, people, or places, meaning "any-," "wh-ever," or "every..."

Throughout this lesson, you will learn about those two main usages of "noun + (이)나" only.

First, let's have a look at the conjugation rules.

Conjugation Rule

Noun + 나 (na)/Noun + 이나 (ina)

Noun ending in a vowel (without a 받침) / Noun ending in a consonant (with a 받침)

For Example:

1. 바다 + 나 = 바다나
"the sea or..."
2. 주스 + 나 = 주스나
"juice or..."
3. 사과 + 나 = 사과나/산 + 이나 = 산이나
"an apple or..."/"a mountain or..."
4. 물 + 이나 = 물이나
"water or..."

5. 귤 + 이나 = 귤이나
"a tangerine or..."

Two Usages (Most Commonly Used) of "Noun + (이)나"

1. To list nouns (= choices or options)

A(이)나 B(이)나 C(이)나... "a choice [between two or more things]" or [something]"

For Example:

<i>Noun(s)</i>	<i>Noun + (이)나</i>	<i>"English"</i>
산 ("a mountain") 바다("the sea") 도시 ("a city")...	산이나 바다나 도시나...	"a mountain, the sea, or a city..."
사과("an apple") 귤("a tangerine") 바나나("a banana")...	사과나 귤이나 바나나나...	"an apple, a tangerine, or a banana..."
한국 ("Korea") 일본 ("Japan") 미국 ("America") 중국 ("China")...	한국이나 일본이나 미국이나 중국이나...	"Korea, Japan, America, or China..."

* Note: We can interchange the expression "**Noun + (이)나**" with "**Noun + (이)든지**."

For Example:

1. 난 바다나 산이나 상관없어 = 난 바다든지 산이든지 상관없어.
Nan badana sanina sang-gwaneopsseo. = Nan badadeunji sanideunji sang-gwaneopsseo.
"I don't mind if we go to either a mountain or the beach."

2. 난 귤이나 바나나나 사과나 다 좋아 = 난 귤이든지 바나나든지 사과든지 다 좋아.
Nan gyurina bananana sagwana da joa. = Nan gyurideunji bananadeunji sagwadeunji sang-gwaneopsseo.
 "I like all of those-a tangerine, a banana, or an apple."
3. 한국이나 일본이나 미국이나 중국이나, 어디든 가자! = 한국이든 일본이든 미국이든 중국이든, 어디든 가자!
Hangugina ilbonina migugina jungugina, eodideun gaja! = Hangugideunji ilbonideunji migugideunji jungugideunji, eodideun gaja!
 "Let's go anywhere-Korea, Japan, America, or China!"

2. Not to discriminate against a thing/person/time/place: A (이)나 "wh-ever," "any-," or "every"

For Example:

Noun(s)	Noun + (이)나	Becomes...	"English..."
누구 ("who")	누구 + 나	누구나...	"whoever, anyone..."
무엇 ("what")	무엇 + 이나	무엇이나...	"whatever, anything..."
커피 ("coffee")	커피 + 나	커피나...	"(without discriminating against) something like coffee..."
물 ("water")	물 + 이나	물이나...	"(without discriminating against) something like water..."

For Example:

1. 이것은 **누구나** 할 수 있는 일입니다.
Igeoseun nuguna hal su itneun il-imnida.
 "This is a job that anyone can do."
2. 난 **무엇이나** 다 잘 합니다.
Nan mu-eosina da jal hamnida.
 "I can do anything well."
3. 너는 우선 **커피나** 마셔.
Neonuen u-seon keopina masyeo.
 "You should (without any discrimination) first drink coffee."
4. (넌) 먼저 **물이나** 마셔.
(Neon) meonjeo murina masyeo.
 "(You) should (without any discrimination) first drink a cup of water."

* Note: We have also learned about one of the usages of -(이)나, which could also mean "as many as" or "as much as."

For Example:

1. 열 번이나
 "as many as five times"
2. 세 시간이나
 "as much as three hours," etc.

Examples from This Dialogue

1. 난 산이나 바다나 상관없어.
Nan san-ina badana sang-gwan-eopseo.
 "I don't mind if we go to either a mountain or the beach."
2. 난 사과 주스나 오렌지 주스.
Nan sagwa juseuna orenji juseu.
 "I want either apple juice or orange juice."

3. 우리 배고픈데 자장면이나 먹을까?
Uri baegopeunde jajangmyeon-ina meogeulkka?
 "I feel a bit hungry. Why don't we get a bowl of black bean noodles or something?"
4. 너는 우선 잠부터 깨야 하니까 커피나 마셔.
Neoneun useon jambuteo kkaeya hanikka keopina masyeo.
 "First you need to drink coffee or something that will help you wake up."
5. 너는 사과 주스나 오렌지 주스 둘 중에 하나 사올게.
Neoneun sagwa juseuna orenji juseu dul jung-e hana sa-olge.
 "I will get either apple juice or orange juice for you."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

(고속도로) 휴게소 [(go-sok-do-ro) hyugesos] "(Highway) Rest Stop"

In Korea, there are many rest stops (or rest areas) in which drivers can rest or eat. Whenever drivers or travelers need a break from a long drive, they can simply stop by at any rest stop to refresh themselves. What's more, the rest stops sell various types of food, snacks, drinks, and you can even enjoy the beautiful scenery.

 Here are a list of recommendations from Thinkware Systems Corp:

Rest Stops with a View	Rest Stops with Good Food	Unique Rest Stops
1. 금강[Geumgang] (경부선 - Gyeongbu line)	1. 경주[Gyeongju] (경부선 - Gyeongbu line)	1. 단양[Danyang] (중앙선 - Jungang line)
2. 행담도[Haengdamdo] (서해안선 - Seohaean line)	2. 용인[Yongin] (영동선 - Yeongdong line)	2. 여산[Yeosan] (호남선 - Honam line)
3. 옥계[Okgye] (동해선 - Donghae line)	3. 서산[Seosan] (서해안선 - Seohaean line)	3. 곡성[Gokseong] (호남선 - Honam line)

LESSON NOTES

Lower Intermediate S2 #9

It Would Be Good if We Could Decide Where to Go in Korea

CONTENTS

- 2 Korean Hangul
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 7 Grammar
- 10 Cultural Insight

9

KOREAN HANGUL

1. 팀: 자! 이걸 철수 거 커피 그리고 이걸 수진이 거 오렌지 주스.
2. 수진: 사람들 많았을 텐데 빨리 왔네.
3. 팀: 아니. 생각보다 많지 않더라. 자! 이제 우리 어디 갈지 이야기해 볼까?
4. 수진: 명동에 쇼핑하러 가는 건 어때?
5. 철수: 아니, 주말이라서 명동 굉장히 복잡할 텐데...
6. 팀: 그럼, 바다나 보러 해운대에 갈까?
7. 철수: 아니, 거기까지 운전해서 가려면 피곤할 텐데.
8. 팀: 그럼, 야경 보러 남산 타워에 갈까?
9. 철수: 아니, 남산타워에 올라 가려면 힘들 텐데.
10. 수진: 야!!! 그럼, 너 생각을 얘기해 봐!
11. 철수: 놀이동산! 롯데월드에 가자. 내가 쓸게.
12. 팀: 정말!!? 오케이! 그럼 롯데월드로 출발.

ROMANIZATION

1. TIM: ja! igeon cheolsu geo keopi geurigo igeon sujini geo orenji juseu.
2. SUJIN: saramdeul manasseul tende ppalli wanne.

CONT'D OVER

3. TIM: ani. saenggakboda manchi anteora. ja! ije uri eodi galji iyagihae bolkka?
4. SUJIN: myeongdonge syopinghareo ganeun geon eottae?
5. CHEOLSU: ani, jumariraseo myeongdong goengjanghi bokjapal tendett
6. TIM: geureom, badana boreo haeundae galkka?
7. CHEOLSU: ani, geogikkaji unjeonhaeseo garyeomyeon pigonhal tende.
8. TIM: geureom, yagyeong boreo namsan tawoe galkka?
9. CHEOLSU: ani, namsantawoe olla garyeomyeon himdeul tende.
10. SUJIN: ya!!! geureom, neo saenggageul yaegihae bwa!
11. CHEOLSU: noridongsan! rotdewoldeue gaja. naega ssolge.
12. TIM: jeongmal!!? okei! geureom rotdewoldeuro chulbal.

ENGLISH

1. TIM: Okay! This coffee is for Cheol-su, and this orange juice is for Su-jin.
2. SU-JIN: There must have been a lot of people in the store, but you came back earlier (than we expected).
3. TIM: Nope, there weren't that many (people). Okay! Shall we talk about where to go to?

CONT'D OVER

4. SU-JIN: How about going to Myeongdong to shop?
5. CHEOL-SU: No. It might be extremely crowded because it's the weekend.
6. TIM: Then, shall we go to Haeundae to see the ocean?
7. CHEOL-SU: No. It might be too tiring to drive up there.
8. TIM: Then, shall we go to the Namsan Tower to see Seoul at night?
9. CHEOL-SU: No. It might be too difficult to go to the top of the tower.
10. SU-JIN: Fine! Then, tell us where you want to go!
11. CHEOL-SU: The amusement park! Let's go to Lotte World. The tickets are on me.
12. TIM : Really? Okay! Then, let's head to Lotte World!

VOCABULARY

Hangul	Romanization	English	Class
생각보다	saeng-gakboda	more than I thought	phrase
쏘다	ssoda	treat [someone] [to a meal]	verb
힘들다	himdeulda	to be difficult, to be arduous	verb
야경	yagyeong	night view	noun
피곤하다	pigonhada	to be tired	verb
오랜만	oraenman	after a long while	noun

복잡하다	bokjaphada	to be congested, to be complicated	verb
쇼핑하다	syopinghada	to go shopping	verb
주말	jumal	weekend	noun
출발	chulbal	departure	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

생각보다 넓어요. saenggakboda neolbeoyo. "It's more spacious than I thought."	오늘 월급 받았으니까 내가 저녁 식사를 쓸 게. oneul wolgeup badaseunikka naega jeonyeok siksareul ssolge. "I got my paycheck today, so I'll buy you dinner."
오늘 맥주는 제가 쓸게요. Oneul maekjuneun jega ssolgeyo. "I'll pay for the beer today."	너 오늘 힘들어 보여. neo oneul himdeureo boyeo. "You look tired today."
일이 너무 많아서 힘들어요. iri neomu manaseo himdeureoyo. "I have too much work so I'm tired."	빌딩 꼭대기에서의 야경은 나를 작게 느껴 지게 만들었다. bilding kkokdaegieseoui yagyeongeun naegal jakge neukkyeojige mandeureotda. "The night view from the top of the building made me feel so small."
남산 타워에 올라가면 서울의 야경을 볼 수 있어요. Namsan tawo-e olragamyeon seoul-ui yagyeong- eul bol su itseoyo. "You can see the night view of Seoul if you go up to Namsan Tower."	어제는 피곤해서 일찍 잤어. eojeneun pigonhaeseo iljik jasseo. "I was tired yesterday, so I went to bed early."

오늘 너무 피곤해요. oneul neomu pigonhaeyo. "I'm so tired today."	집에서 밥 먹는 건 오랜만이에요. jib-eseo bap meokneun geon oraenmanieyo. "It's been a while since I've eaten at home."
문제가 더 복잡해졌어. Munjega deo bokjaphaejyeotseo. "The problem has become more complicated."	아침에 지하철은 출근하는 사람들로 복잡합니다. Achime jihacheoreun chulgeunhaneun saramdeulro bokjaphamnida. "The subway gets congested with commuters in the morning."
엄마랑 둘이서 쇼핑하러 갔어요. eommarang duriseo syopinghareo gassoyo. "I went shopping together with my mother."	주말은 주로 어떻게 보내세요? jumareun juro eotteoke bonaeseyo? "How do you usually spend your weekends?"
출발 시간을 기억할 수 없는 경우, 티켓을 재차 확인하시기 바랍니다. chulbal siganeul gieokal su eomneun gyeongu, tikeseul jaecha hwaginhasigi baramnida. "If you can't remember the departure time, please check your ticket twice."	출발은 내일이에요. chulbal-eun nae-il-ieyo. "The departure is tomorrow."

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

1. Person (name / Noun) 께 [kkeo] "'s"

This word, 께 [kkeo], is often used when to express "something that belongs to someone", or the possessives of nouns.

This word, - 께 [kkeo], is a shortened form of - 의 것 [ui geot].

 **Formation: Person (Name / Noun) + 께**

For Example:

1. 이 과자는 철수꺼(야) = 철수의 것(이야).
I gwajaneun Cheol-su-kkeo(ya) = cheol-su-ui geot(iya).
 "This snack belongs to Cheol-su. = This snack is Cheol-su's (snack)."
2. 저 주스는 팀꺼입니다 = 팀의 것입니다.
Jeo juseuneun timkkeo-immnida = timui geot-immnida.
 "That juice belongs to Tim. = That juice is Tim's (snack)."
3. 그것은 팀꺼, 저것은 철수꺼, 그리고 이것은 내꺼!
Geugeoseun Timkkeo, jeogeoseun Cheolsukkeo, geurigo igeoseun naekkeo!
 "That one is Tim's, that is Cheol-su's, and this is mine!"

2. (내가) 쓸게! [(naega) ssolkke] "It's on me!"

This phrase, 내가 쓸게 [*naega ssolkke*] "it's on me", is often used when someone wants to pay for an expense.

내가 쓸게 is a common slang term of 내가 낼게! [*naega naelkke*] "I'll pay (for everything)!" or 내가 살게! [*naega salkke*] "I'll buy (everything)!".

Let's break the phrase down...

- 내가 [*naega*] "I"
- 쏘다 [*ssoda*] "to shoot"
- 쏘 "verb stem" + ㄹ게 "will do" = 쓸개 "(I) will do shoot"
- Therefore, 내가 쓸게 literally means "I will shoot!", which we can translate it as "I will buy or pay for everything" = "It's on me".

For Example:

1. 오늘 저녁은 제가 쏘겠습니다.
Oneul jeonyeokeun jega ssogetseumnida.
 "Today's dinner is on me!"
2. 저번 저녁은 너가 샀으니까 오늘 저녁은 내가 쓸게.
Jeobeon jeonyeogeun neoga sswatsseu-nikka oneul jeonyeogeun naega ssolkke
 "You bought me a dinner last time, so today's dinner is on me."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is about **ㄹ/을 텐데**, meaning "It Would/Could/Should/Might Have Been."

남산타워에 올라 갈려면 힘들 텐데...

Namsantawo-e olra galryeomyeon himdeul tende...

"It would be difficult to go up to the top of the Tower..."

We use VST + **ㄹ/을 텐데** when we want to express a speaker's expectation, presumption, intention, or opinion about a certain event, situation, or circumstance.

First, let's take a look at the structure of **텐데** (*tende*).

The Structure of **텐데** (*Tende*)

텐데 basically comes from **터 + 이 + ㄴ데** → **터인데** (*teoinde*) → **텐데** (*tende*)

- **터** is a dependable noun that indicates a (previous) expectation, presumption, will (intention), or a state (condition) of a speaker."
- **이** is the stem of a word
- **ㄴ데** is the ending of a word
- Therefore, **터 + 이 + ㄴ데** becomes **터인데** (*teoinde*) = **텐데** (*tende*), meaning "it would/could/should/might be or have been."

Second, now let's take a look at the conjugation rules.

Conjugation Rule

Present or Past Verb Stem + ㄹ/을 텐데 (*tende*): "it would/could/should/might be or have been"

{Rule #1}: We attach **ㄹ 텐데** to verb stems ending in a **vowel** (without a 받침).

{Rule #2}: We attach **을 텐데** to verb stems ending in a **consonant** (with a 받침).

Present / Past Verb Stem	Verb Stem + ㄹ/을 텐데	Becomes...	Translation
-----------------------------	-----------------------	------------	-------------

1. 많다 "to be many/ much" {Rule #2}	많 + 을 텐데	많을 텐데	"there could be many/much"
2. 많았(었)다 "was/ were many" {Rule #2}	많았(었) + 을 텐데	많았(었)을 텐데	"there could have been many/much"
3. 만나다 "to meet" {Rule #1}	만나 + ㄹ 텐데	만날 텐데	"could meet"
4. 만났(었)다 "met" {Rule #2}	만났(었) + 을 텐데	만났(었)을 텐데	"could have (been) met"
5. 보다 "to see/ watch" {Rule #1}	보 + ㄹ 텐데	볼 텐데	"would see/watch"
6. 보았(었)다 "saw/ watched" {Rule #2}	보았(었) + 을 텐데	보았(었)을 텐데	"would have (been) seen/watched"

For Example:

1. 지금은 여름이라 수영장에 사람들이 **많을 텐데**...
Jigeumeun yeoreum-ira suyeongjange saramdeuli maneultende...
"There **could be many** people in the swimming pool since it is summer..."
2. 버스 타고 왔어? 버스 안에 사람들이 **많았었을 텐데**...
Beoseu tago waseo? Beoseu ane saramdeuli manasseosseul tende...
"Did you come here by bus?" "There **could have been many** people on the bus..."
3. 거기에 가면 그를 **만날 텐데**...
Geogie gamyeon geureul man-nal tende...
"You **could meet** him if you go there..."
4. 거기에 갔었으면 그를 **만났(었)을 텐데**...
Geogie gasseosseu-myeon geureul man-nasseosseul tende...
"You **might have met** him if you went there..."

5. 동대문에 가면 다양한 옷들을 볼 텐데...
Dongdaemune gamyeon dayanghan ot-deuleul bol tende...
"(You) **could see** various types of clothing if you go to Dongdaemun..."
6. 작년에 그 수영장에 갔었다면 많은 사람들을 보았었을 텐데...
Jang-nyeone geu su-yeongjang-e gasseotdamyeon maneun saramdeureul bo-asseosseul tende...
"(You) **should have seen** many people if you went to that swimming pool last year..."

Examples from This Dialogue

1. 사람들 많았을 텐데 빨리 왔네.
Saramdeul manasseul tende ppalri watne.
"There must have been many people in the store, but you came back earlier (than we expected)."
2. 주말이라서 명동 굉장히 복잡할 텐데...
Jumal-iraseo myeong-dong goeng-jang-hi bokjjapal tende...
"It might be extremely crowded in Myeongdong because it's the weekend..."
3. 거기까지 운전해서 갈려면 피곤할 텐데...
Geogikkaji unjeonhaeseo galryeomyeon pigonhal tende...
"It might be too tiring to drive up there..."
4. 남산타워에 올라 갈려면 힘들 텐데...
Namsantawo-e olra galryeomyeon himdeul tende...
"It might be too difficult to go to the top of the tower..."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

* 남산타워 (*Namsan tawo*) "Namsan Tower"

남산타워 "Namsan Tower" (also known as N서울타워 (*N Seoul tawo*) "N Seoul Tower") is an

observation tower located in Mt. Namsan in Seoul. It was built in 1969 and measures 777 feet in height. If the weather cooperates, the tower allows you to get a view of the whole city of Seoul. What's more, many Seoul residents enjoy climbing to the top of the tower in the morning and evening to exercise. The tower also features a gift shop and restaurants where visitors can purchase souvenirs and sample delicious Korean food, snacks, and drinks.

Hours:

Observatory: 10:00 to 23:00 (ticket sales stop at 23:00)

Other facilities: 11:00 to 23:00 (ticket sales stop at 21:30)

Admission:

	Adults	Youths/Senior	Children
Observation Tower	~~₩~~ 9,000 = \$9.00 US	~~₩~~ 7,000 = \$7.00 US	~~₩~~ 5,000 = \$5.00 US
Teddy Bear Museum	~~₩~~ 8,000 = \$8.00 US	~~₩~~ 6,000 = \$6.00 US	~~₩~~ 5,000 = \$5.00 US
Observation Tower +Museum	~~₩~~ 14,000 = \$14.00 US	~~₩~~ 10,000 = \$10.00 US	~~₩~~ 7,000 = \$7.00 US
Observation Tower +Restaurant (Lunch)	~~₩~~ 30,000 = \$30.00 US	~~₩~~ 29,000 = \$29.00 US	~~₩~~ 13,500 = \$13.50 US
Observation Tower +Restaurant (Dinner)	~~₩~~ 42,000 = \$42.00 US	~~₩~~ 41,000 = \$41.00 US	~~₩~~ 14,500 = \$14.50 US

Youths: Junior/high school students (13 to 18 years old)

Children: Elementary school students (4 to 12 years old)

Seniors (over 65 years old): Same as the children's fee

Directions:

First, take subway line 4 to 명동역 (Myeong-dong yeok) "Myeongdong Station."

Second, take **exit 3** and **continue walking along the alley next to Pacific Hotel**.
Last, ride on the **cable car**.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Intermediate S2 #10

Defying Death at a Korean Amusement Park

CONTENTS

- 2 Korean Hangul
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 7 Grammar
- 10 Cultural Insight

10

KOREAN HANGUL

1. (롯데월드에서 철수 소리 "악.")
2. 수진: 휴. 나 진짜 간 떨어질 뻔했어.
3. 팀: 하하. 철수 너는, 괜찮아?
4. 철수: 야! 나 죽는 줄 알았다. 너지!? '후렌치 레볼루션'이 탈 만하다고 말한 게?
5. 팀: 미안. 나도 숨 넘어갈 뻔했어.
6. 철수: 이번에는 덜 무서운 걸로 타자.
7. 팀: 아.! 바이킹이 진짜 안 무섭고 탈 만하다고 하던데!
8. 철수: 그럼, 그거 타러 가자!
9. (자리에 앉고 벨트가 조여지는 소리)
10. 바이킹 안전요원: 안전벨트를 꼭 매주세요!
11. 철수: 야. 이거 뭔가 불안하지 않아? 팀. 이거 정말 안 무서운 거 맞아?
12. 팀: 하하. 아니! 이거 '후렌치 레볼루션'보다 더 무서운 거야. 이제 넌 죽었다. 하하!
13. 철수: 뭐라고!!!
14. (바이킹이 움직이기 시작한다.)
15. 철수: 우우우. 엄마. 살려줘.

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. SUJIN: hyu. na jinjjaga tteoreojil ppeonhaesseo.
2. TIM: haha. cheolsu neoneun, gwaenchana?
3. CHEOLSU: ya! na jungneun jul raratda. neoji!? 'hurencchi rebollusyeon'i tal manhadago malhan ge?
4. TIM: mian. nado sum neomeogal ppeonhaesseo.
5. CHEOLSU: ibeoneneun deol museoun geollo taja.
6. TIM: a.! baikingi jinjjaga an museopgo tal manhadago hadeonde!
7. CHEOLSU: geureom, geugeo tareo gaja!
8. BAIKING
ANJEONNYOWO
N: anjeonbelteureul kkwak maejuseyo!
9. CHEOLSU: ya. igeo mwonga buranhaji ana? tim. igeo jeongmal an museoun geo maja?
10. TIM: haha. ani! igeo hurencchi rebollusyeonboda deo museoun geoya. ije neon jugeotda. haha!
11. CHEOLSU: mworago!!!
12. CHEOLSU: uuu. eomma. sallyeojwo.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. (The sound of Cheol-su shouting on a roller coaster in Lotte World)
2. SU-JIN: Whew. I came close to dying.
3. TIM: Haha. How about you, Cheol-su? Are you all right?
4. CHEOL-SU: No! I thought I was going to die! Was it you, Tim, who said that the "The French Revolution" wasn't that scary?
5. TIM: Sorry. I was scared to death, too.
6. CHEOL-SU: Let's ride something that is less scary this time.
7. TIM: Ah.! I heard that "Viking" isn't that scary at all and very enjoyable too!
8. CHEOL-SU: Then let's go on that!
9. (The sound of fastening seat belts in the roller coaster ride)
10. STAFF: Please fasten your seat belts!
11. CHEOL-SU: Hey. this doesn't feel right! Tim, are you sure this isn't scary?
12. TIM: Haha. Yep! "Viking" is supposed to be scarier than "French Revolution!" You're dead meat! Ha ha!
13. CHEOL-SU: What!
14. (They start to move)
15. CHEOL-SU: Oh. Mommy. save me.

VOCABULARY

Hangul	Romanization	English	Class
더	deo	more	adjective
무서운	museoun	scary	adjective
안전벨트	anjeonbelteu	safety belt	noun
살려주다	salryeojuda	to save, to rescue, to spare	verb
이번	ibeon	this time	noun
타다	tada	to ride, to take (transportation)	verb
불안하다	buranhada	to be uneasy	verb
덜	deol	less	adverb
보다	boda	(more) than	adjective
메다	meda	to tie, to fasten	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

한국이 더 비싸요. hangugi deo bissaeyo. "Korea is more expensive."	여자친구가 무서운 장면에서 얼굴을 돌렸다. yeojachinguga museoun jangmyeoneseo eolgul dolryeotta. "My girlfriend hid her face from the scary scene."
안전벨트 매세요. anjeonbelteu maeseyo. "Please fasten your seatbelt."	그는 물에 빠진 여자를 살려주었다. Geuneun mure ppajin yeojareul salryeoju-eotda. "He rescued a drowning woman."

이번에는 제가 살게요. ibeoneneun jega salkkeyo. I will get it this time (bill).	너 또 늦었어! 이번에는 어떤 변명할거야? neo tto neu-jeot-sseo! i-byeon-e-neun eo-tteon byeon-myeong-hal-geo-ya? "You are late again! What's your excuse this time?"
승합차이니까 8명까지 탈 수 있어요. Seunghapchainikka yeodeolmyeongkkaji tal ssu isseoyo. "Since it's a van, up to eight people can ride it."	이유 없이 불안했다. Iyu eopsi buranhaetda. "I felt uneasy without any reason."
오늘은 어제보다 덜 덥다. 그렇지? Oneureun eojeboda deol deopda. Geureotchi? "It is less hot today than it was yesterday, isn't it?"	저는 시골보다 도시가 좋아요. Jeo-neun sigol-boda dosi-ga joayo. "I like cities better than the countryside."
맥주보다 소주가 싸요. Maekjuboda sojuga ssayo. "Soju is cheaper than beer."	그 사람은 총대를 잘못 메서 회사에서 해고 되었다. Geu saram-eun chongdaereul jalmot meseo hoesaeseo haegodoeetda. "The man took the wrong responsibility, so he has been fired."

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

1. 후렌치 레볼루션 (*Hurenchi lebolusyeon*) "The French Revolution" and 바이킹 (*Baiking*) "Viking"

- 후렌치 레볼루션 "The French Revolution" is the name of a roller coaster ride in 롯데월드, which is "Lotte World."

Here is a related video clip:

- 바이킹 (*baiking*) "Viking" is one of the scariest rides you can easily find at any amusement

park in Korea.

2. 간 떨어지다 (*Gan tteoreojida*)/숨 넘어가다 (*Sum neomeogada*) "to be frightened"/"to be terrified out of one's senses" = "I was scared to death."

We often use both phrases, 간 떨어지다 and 숨 넘어가다, when describing our frightened or terrified condition after experiencing a tremendous amount of horror, terror, or fright.

Let's break both phrases down:

☞ 간 떨어지다 (*Gan tteoreojida*)

- 간 (*gan*) is a noun that means "the liver."
- 떨어지다 (*tteoreojida*) is a verb that means "to drop."

Therefore, 간 떨어지다 literally means "the liver dropped," which contextually (culturally) means "I was scared to death" in English.

간이 콩알만 해지다 (*gani kong-alman haejida*) "The size of my liver became the size of a bean" is a synonym of 간 떨어지다 (*gan tteoreojida*).

☞ 숨 넘어가다 (*Sum neomeogada*)

- 숨 (*sum*) is a noun that means "breath"/"breathing"
- 넘어가다 (*neomeogada*) is a verb that means "to swallow."

Therefore, 숨 넘어가다 literally means "to swallow one's breath," which contextually (culturally) means "I was scared to death" in English.

3. 년 죽었다 (*Neon jugeotda*) "You're dead." = "You're dead meat."

We often use the phrase 년 죽었다 between close friends, when describing one's hopeless situation or challenges that he/she is about to face within the near future.

Let's break the phrase down:

- 년 (*neon*) is a shortened form of 너는 (*neoneun*) "you are."
- 죽었다 (*jugeotda*) is a verb that means "to die."

Therefore, 년 죽었다 literally means "you're dead," which contextually means "you're dead meat" (slang) in English.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is about -ㄹ/을 뻔하다, meaning to "Come Close to Something" or to "Come Close to Doing Something."

나 진짜 간 떨어질 뻔했어.

We use VST + ㄹ/을 뻔하다 to express "something almost happened (but actually has NOT happened)."

We often use the expression ㄹ/을 뻔하다 with overexaggerated phrases or sentences in the past.

First, let's take a look at the word...뻔하다 (*ppeonhada*), meaning "something almost happened or came close to something."

- 뻔 (*ppeon*) is a dependable noun that indicates "close," "nearly," or "almost."

- 하다 (*hada*) is a verb that means "to do."

Therefore, 뻔하다 (*ppeonhada*) literally means "nearly do something" or "something is nearly done," which contextually means "an event/an outcome came close to something/to doing something."

Second, now let's take a look at the conjugation rules.

📖 Conjugation Rule

Present or Past Verb Stem + ㄹ/을 뻔하다 (*ppeonhada*) "(almost) came close to something"/"came close to doing something (but actually has NOT happened)"

{Rule #1} - We attach ㄹ 뻔하다 to verb stems ending in a **vowel** (without a 받침).

{Rule #2} - We attach 을 뻔하다 to verb stems ending in a **consonant** (with a 받침).

Present / Past Verb Stem	Verb Stem + ㄹ/을 뻔하다	Becomes...	"English"
1. 죽다 "to die" {Rule #2}	죽 + 을 뻔하다	죽을 뻔하다	"I came close to dying"
2. 만나다 "to meet" {Rule #1}	만나 + ㄹ 뻔하다	만날 뻔하다	"I came close to meeting [someone]"

3. 주다 "to give" {Rule #1}	주 + ㄹ 뻔하다	줄 뻔하다	"I came close to giving [something]"
4. 받다 "to receive" {Rule #2}	받 + 을 뻔하다	받을 뻔하다	"I came close to receiving [something]"

* Note: We very often use 아(서) + 죽을 뻔하다 to overexaggerate and describe one's condition.

For Example:

- 저는 저번주에 배가 고파서 죽을 뻔했습니다.
"I almost died from hunger last week."
- 나 정말 힘들어서 죽을 뻔했어.
"I almost died from being tired."
- 심심해서 죽을 뻔했습니다.
"I almost died from boredom."

Sample Sentences

- 휴~~ 나 이거 먹고 죽을 뻔했어!
Hyu~~ na igeo meokko jugeul ppeonhaesseo!
"Whew! I almost died after eating this (food)!"
- 우리 그때 그 음식점에서 만날 뻔했는데...
Uri geuddae geu eumsikjeomeseo man-nal ppeonhaetneunde...
"We could have met each other at the restaurant that time..."
- 잘못해서 이 돈을 그 사람한테 줄 뻔했어!
Jalmotaeseo i doneul geu saramhante jul ppeonhaesseo!
"I almost gave him this money by mistake!"

4. 아~~ 그때, 상을 받을 뻔 했는데...
A~~ *geuttae, sangeul badeul ppeon haetneunde...*
"Ah~~ I came close to receiving the reward..."

Examples from This Dialogue

1. 휴~~ 나 진짜 간 떨어질 뻔했어.
Hyu~~ Na jinjja gan tteorofil ppeonhaetseo.
"Whew~~ I came close to dying."
2. 나 죽는 줄 알았다.
Na jung-neun jul aratda.
"I thought I was going to die!"
3. 나도 숨넘어갈 뻔했어...
Nado sum-neomeogal ppeonhaetseo...
"I was scared to death too..."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

* 롯데월드 (*lotdewoldeu*) "Lotte World"

According to the *Guinness Book of World Records*, 롯데월드, which means "Lotte World," is the world's largest indoor theme park and has:

1. 1. An outdoor amusement park called "Magic Island"
2. 2. A Korean folk museum
3. 3. Shopping malls
4. 4. A sports center (including a skating rink and a waterslide park)
5. 5. A luxury hotel

6. 6. Movie theaters

History of 롯데월드

롯데월드 opened in 1989 and receives over eight million visitors each year.

Location of 롯데월드

롯데월드 is located in 신천동 (Sincheon-dong), 송파구 (Songpa-gu), 서울 (Seoul).

Hours:

09:30-23:00 (open nights throughout the year)

Open nights: 17:00-23:00

Admission:

Admission: Includes admission and performances

	Adults	Youths	Children
Day	26,000 won (= \$26 US)	23,000 won (= \$23 US)	20,000 won (= \$20 US)
Night	22,000 won (= \$22 US)	19,000 won (= \$19 US)	16,000 won (= \$16 US)

Unlimited Usage Ticket

	Adults	Youths	Children
Day	38,000 won (= \$38 US)	33,000 won (= \$33 US)	29,000 won (= \$29 US)
Night	31,000 won (= \$31 US)	27,000 won (= \$27 US)	23,000 won (= \$23 US)

Total Facility Usage Ticket: Unlimited Usage Ticket after Performance Admission

	Adults	Youths	Children
--	--------	--------	----------

Day	19,000 won (= \$19 US)	16,500 won (= \$16.5 US)	14,500 won (= \$14.5 US)
Night	15,500 won (= \$15.5 US)	13,500 won (= \$13.5 US)	11,500 won (= \$11.5 US)

Adults include college students, and youths are from thirteen to eighteen years old.

Directions to 롯데월드

Visitors can easily access 롯데월드 from 잠실역 (*Jamsil*) "station" on Line 2 and Line 8 of the Seoul subway.

It is located near 석촌 호수 (*seokchon hosu*) "Seokchon Lake.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Intermediate S2 #11

Showing Restraint in Korea

CONTENTS

- 2 Korean Hangul
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 7 Grammar
- 10 Cultural Insight

11

KOREAN HANGUL

1. (멈추고 있는 바이킹)
2. 팀: 철수야! 철수야! 괜찮아? 정신 차려!
3. 철수: (힘없이) 휴. 너! 마음 같아서는 한 대 때리고 싶은데 내가 지금 몸이 안 따라준다. 나 토할 것 같아. 오웬.
4. 팀: 야! 화장실 저쪽이야!
5. (우웬, 우웬! 화장실에서 손과 얼굴을 닦고)
6. 수진: 철수야. 괜찮아?
7. 철수: 응. 이제 좀 괜찮아진 것 같아. 생각만 해도 화나네. 팀, 이 자식 어디 갔어?
8. 수진: 너한테 한 대 맞을 거 같다고 벌써 도망갔어.
9. 철수: 뭐? 도망? 마음 같아서는 쫓아가고 싶지만. 내가 참는다. 휴.
10. (따르릉.)
11. 수진: 여보세요. 어. 팀! 어, 어, 어.어. 알았어. (전화 끊음) 철수야! 팀이 "너가 이 세상에서 제일 좋대."
12. 철수: 뭐!? 하하. 생각 같아선 혼내주고 싶지만 내가 참는다. 빨리 오라고 해.

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. TIM: cheolsuya! cheolsuya! gwaenchana? jeongsin charyeo!
2. CHEOLSU: hyu. neo! maeum gataseoneun han dae ttaerigo sipeunde naega jigeum momi an ttarajunda. na tohal geot gachi. owek.
3. TIM: ya! hwajangsil jeojjogiya!
4. SUJIN: cheolsuya. gwaenchana?
5. CHEOLSU: eung. ije jom gwaenchanajin geot gata. saenggangman haedo hwanane. tim, i jasik geodi gaseo?
6. SUJIN: neohante han dae majeul geo gatdago beolsseo domanggaseo.
7. CHEOLSU: mwo? domang? maeum gataseoneun jjochagago sipjiman. naega chamneunda. hyu.
8. SUJIN: yeoboseyo. eo. tim! eo, eo, eo.eo. arasseo. cheolsuya! timi "neoga i sesangeseo jeil jotae.te
9. CHEOLSU: mwo!? haha. saenggak gataseon honnaejugo sipjiman naega chamneunda. ppalli orago hae.

ENGLISH

1. (The sound of Viking stopping)
2. TIM: Cheolsu, Cheolsu, are you all right? Wake up!

CONT'D OVER

3. CHEOLSU: (a deep sigh) Why, you! I really want to slap you, but my body won't follow. I feel like throwing up. (vomiting)
4. TIM: Hey! The bathroom is over there!
5. (The sound of vomiting and washing his hands.)
6. SUJIN: Cheolsu, do you feel better?
7. CHEOLSU: I feel better now. Just thinking about it makes me angry. Where did Tim go?
8. SUJIN: He already ran away because he thought you were going to hit him.
9. CHEOLSU: What? He ran away? I want to go after him, but I'll control myself.
10. (Phone ringing)
11. SUJIN: Hello. Oh, Tim! Yes, yes, yes. Okay, I will tell him! (Hangs up the phone) Tim said, "You're his favorite person in the world."
12. CHEOLSU: What!? Haha. I want to punish him, but I'll control myself. Tell him to hurry and come.

VOCABULARY

Hangul	Romanization	English	Class
참다	chamda	to endure, to put up with, to control	verb
쫓아가다	jjochagada	to chase, to follow	verb
벌써	beolsseo	already	adverb

맞다	matda	to hit, to slap, to beat	verb
좀	jom	a bit, a little	adverb
저쪽	jeojjok	over there	noun
화나다	hwanada	to get angry, to get mad	
몸이 안 따라준다	momi an ttarajunda	the body won't follow the heart/mind	phrase
때리다	ttaerida	to hit, to beat	verb
제일	jeil	the most, the best	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

집에 가고 싶어도 참았어요. jibe gago sipeodo chamasseoyo. "I hung in there and endured it even though I wanted to go home."	경찰은 도둑을 쫓아갔다. Gyeong-chareun dodugeul jjochagatda. "The police chased after the burglar."
현우는 벌써 잠들었어. Hyeonu-neun beolsseo jamdeuleosseo. "Hyunwoo already fell asleep."	그는 맞아서 온 몸에 멍이 들었다. Geuneun majaseo on mome meong-i deureotda. "He had bruises all over his body because he was beaten up."
오늘 좀 추워요. oneul jom chuwoyo. "It's a bit cold today."	도서관은 저쪽이에요. doseogwaneun jeojjogieyo. "The library is over there."
저쪽에 은행이 있어요. jeo jjok-e eunhaeng-i isseoyo. "There's a bank over there."	저한테 화났어요? jeo hante hwanasseoyo? "Are you mad at me?"

마음은 굴뚝같은데 몸이 안 따라준다. Ma-eumeun gulttukgateunde momi an ttarajunda. "The heart is willing, but the body won't follow."	한수는 민수를 심하게 때렸다. Hansuneun minsu-reul simhage ttaeryeotda. "Hansu hit Minsu hard."
공부가 제일 쉬워요. gongbuga jeil swiwoyo. "Studying is the easiest thing to do."	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

1. 마음 (*ma-eum*) "mind"

We often use the word 마음 (*ma-eum*) to describe one's "mind," "spirit," "mood," "desire," "feeling," or even "heart."

For Example:

- 마음이 넓은 사람
ma-eumi neolbeun saram
"a broad-minded person"
- 착한 마음
chakan ma-eum
"a good heart"
- 한국어를 공부하고 싶은 마음
hangugeoreul gongbuhago sipeun ma-eum
"a desire to study Korean"
- 그는 마음이 없어요...
Geuneun ma-eumi eopsseoyo...
"He has no heart..." = "He is extremely cold..."

2. 생각 (*saeng-gak*) "thought(s)"

We often use the word 생각 (*saeng-gak*) to describe one's "thought," "idea," "opinion," "will," or

"intention."

For Example:

1. 생각이 깊은 사람
saeng-gagi gipeun saram
"a deep thinker"
2. 아! 나에게 좋은 생각이 있어!
Ah! Na-ege joeun saeng-gagi itseo!
"Oh, I have a good idea!"
3. 내 생각에는 비가 올 것 같아.
Nae saeng-gageneun biga ol geot gata.
"In my opinion, it will rain."
4. 생각 같아서는 널 혼내주고 싶다.
Saeng-gak gataseoneun neol hon-naejugo siptta.
"I wanted to punish you."

3. 토하다 (*tohada*) "to vomit"/"to throw up"

The word 토하다 (*tohada*) means "to throw up," and we often use it when "one feels like throwing up."

For Example:

1. 난 술을 과하게 마시면 토해.
Nan suleul kwahage masimyeon tohae.
"I usually throw up whenever I drink heavily."
2. 야! 여기서 토하지 마!
Ya! Yeogiseo tohaji ma!
"Hey! Don't throw up here!"
3. 야~~ 나 지금 토할거 같아...
Ya~~ Na jigeum tohalgeo gata...
"I feel like I'm going to throw up right now..."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is about 마음 같아서는/생각 같아서는, Meaning "I Really Feel Like/I Want...But..."

생각 같아선 혼내주고 싶지만 내가 참는다.

Saeng-gak gataseon hon-naejugo sipjiman naega chamneunda.

"I really feel like/I want to punish (him), but I'll control myself/hold back."

We often use **noun + 같아서는** (*gataseoneun*) right after nouns such as 마음 "mind"/"heart" or 생각 "feeling"/"idea"/"intention."

For Example:

1. 마음 같아서는
ma-eum gataseoneun
"I (my heart) wants (feels)... but..."
2. 생각 같아서는
saeng-gak gataseoneun
"(I think) I want... but..."

Let's take a deeper look at the word 같아서는 (*gataseoneun*).

First, let's break down the word 같아서는 (*gataseoneun*). 같- (*gat*) "to be the same," "to be like," "to be alike," "it seems (= looks) like/as if." 아서 (*aseo*) is a postpositional word indicating "so" or "therefore." 는 (*neun*) is a postpositional word indicating "but," "however," or "by the way." Therefore, all together, we have 같- + -아서 + -는 = 같아서는 (*gataseoneun*) "so I really feel like... but..."

Second, the word 같아서는 (*gataseoneun*) often follows after 마음 "mind"/"heart" or 생각 "idea"/"opinion"/"feeling."

For Example:

1. 마음 + 같아서는 = 마음 같아서는...
"I (my heart) wants (feels)... but..."
2. 생각 + 같아서는 = 생각같아서는...
"(I think) I want... but..."

Third, **같아선** (*gataseon*) is a shortened form of **같아서는** (*gataseoneun*).

Now let's take a look at the conjugation rule.

Conjugation Rule

<i>Noun</i>	<i>Noun + 같아서는</i>	<i>Becomes...</i>	<i>"English"</i>
1. 마음 "the mind"/"the heart"	마음 + 같아서는	마음 같아서는	"I (my heart) wants (feels)... but..."
2. 생각 "a feeling"/"a thought"/"an opinion"	생각 + 같아서는	생각 같아서는	"(I think) I want... but..."
3. 기분 "a feeling"/"a mood"	기분 + 같아서는	기분 같아서는	"(I feel) I want... but..."

For Example:

- 마음 같아서는 지금이라도 당장 가고 싶은데, 내가 지금 일하는 중이야!
Ma-eum gataseoneun jigeumirado dangjang gago sipeunde, naega jigeum ilhaneun jung-iya!
"I really want to be there right now, but (I can't because) I am in the middle of work!"
- 마음 같아선 당장이라도 먹고 싶지만 내가 지금 다이어트 중이라...
Ma-eum gataseoneun dangjang-irado meokgo sipjiman naega jigeum dai-eoteu jung-ira...
"I (my heart) really want to eat right now, but (I can't because) I am on a diet..."
- 생각 같아서는 당장이라도 그만 두고 싶은데, 난 돈이 필요해!
Saeng-gak gataseoneun dangjang-irado geuman dugo sipeunde, nan doni piryohae!
"(I feel) I want to quit (this job) right now, but (I can't because) I need money!"

4. 생각 같아선 한 대 때리고 싶지만 내가 참는다!
Saeng-gak gataseon han dae ttaerigo sipjiman naega chamneunda!
 "(I feel) I want to slap you, but I'll hold back!"
5. 지금 기분 같아서는 날아갈 것 같아!
Jigeum gibun gataseoneun naragal geot gata!
 "It feels like I can fly right now!"
6. 지금 기분 같아선 아무나 만나고 싶어!
Jigeum gibun gataseon amuna man-nago sipeo!
 "(I feel) I want to date anyone right now!"

Examples from This Dialogue

1. 너! 마음 같아서는 한 대 때리고 싶은데 내가 지금 몸이 안 따라준다.
Neo! Maeum gataseoneun han dae ttaerigo sipeunde naega jigeum momi an ttarajunda. Na tohal geot gata.
 "Hey! I really want to hit you, but my body won't follow."
2. 마음 같아서는 쫓아가고 싶지만... 내가 참는다.
Ma-eum gataseoneun jjochagago sipjiman... Naega chamneunda.
 "I want to chase after him. but I'll hold back."
3. 생각 같아선 혼내주고 싶지만 내가 참는다.
Saeng-gak gataseon hon-naejugo sipjiman naega chamneunda.
 "I want to punish him, but I'll control myself."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

*도망치다 (*domang-chida*) "to run away," "to escape"

도망 (*domang*) is a noun that means "runaway," "getaway," "escape," etc. 도망치다 (*domang-chida*) is a verb that means "to run away" or "to escape." There are two other similar

expressions (slang) that indicate the same situation, "running away." They are **토끼다** (*tokkida*) and **꼬리를 빼다** (*kkorireul ppaeda*).

Let's take a look at each word.

1. 토끼다 (*tokkida*) "to run away"

토끼 (*tokki*) is a noun that has the literal meaning of "a rabbit." 토끼 "a rabbit" has a distinctive quality that it can run and move fast. Therefore, 토끼 + 다 = 토끼다 (*tokkida*) becomes a verb that means "to run away."

For Example:

- 저기 팀봐, 토끼네! =(도망치네!)
Jeogi Timbwa, tokkine!
"Look at Tim (over there). He's running away!"

2. 꼬리를 빼다 (*kkorireul ppaeda*) "to run off/away"

꼬리 (*kkori*) is a noun meaning "a tail." 빼다 (*ppaeda*) is a verb meaning "to pull out," "to take out," or "to remove." A lizard or a mouse tends to cut his tail when he feels threatened and desperately runs away. Therefore, 꼬리를 빼다 (*kkorireul ppaeda*) means "to escape" or "to run away."

For Example:

- 저기 꼬리를 빼고 달아나는 사람은 팀이다!
Jeogi kkorireul ppaego darananeun saram-eun Timida!
"That person who's running away is Tim!"

LESSON NOTES

Lower Intermediate S2 #12

Let's Plan Our Next Move in Korea

CONTENTS

2	Korean Hangul
2	Romanization
3	English
5	Vocabulary
5	Sample Sentences
6	Vocabulary Phrase Usage
7	Grammar
12	Cultural Insight

12

KOREAN HANGUL

1. (롯데월드에서 나오면서)
2. 철수: 팀, 너는 장난이 너무 심해. 나 바이킹 탈 때 정말 죽을 뻔했어.
3. 팀: 잘못했어. 대신에 너가 하고 싶은 대로 다 할게.
4. 철수: 정말? 나. 사실.배가 좀 고파데.
5. 팀: 그래? 뭐 좀 먹을까?
6. 철수: 나는 자장면 곱빼기!
7. 팀: 역시 철수 너는 내 예상대로구나! 수진이는?
8. 수진: 우리 아까 말한 대로 닭갈비도 괜찮을 것 같아!
9. 팀: 아 그럼, 우리 아까 정한 대로 춘천 닭갈비 먹을까?
10. 철수: 정한 대로? 언제 정한 거야? 그럼 나한테 왜 물어본 거야...
11. 수진: 사실은 아까 팀하고 춘천 가서 '춘천 닭갈비' 먹을까하고 이야기했었거든. 미안!
12. 팀: 자, 그럼 계획대로 춘천으로 가볼까.
13. 수진: 그래, "춘천으로 고고씽.!!!"
14. (차 엔진 켜지는 소리)

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. CHEOLSU: tim, neoneun jangnani neomu simhae. na baiking tal ttae jeongmal jugeul ppeonhaeseo.
2. TIM: jalmotaesseo. daesine neoga hago sipeun daero da halge.
3. CHEOLSU: jeongmal? na. sasil.baega jom gopeunde.
4. TIM: geurae? mwo jom meogeulkka?
5. CHEOLSU: naneun jajangmyeon goppaegi!
6. TIM: yeoksi cheolsu neoneun nae yesangdaeroguna! sujineun?
7. SUJIN: uri akka malhan daero dakgalbido gwaenchaneul geot gata!
8. TIM: a geureom, uri akka jeonghan daero chuncheon dakgalbi meogeulkka?
9. CHEOLSU: jeonghan daero? eonje jeonghan geoya? geureom nahante wae mureobon geoya
10. SUJIN: sasireun akka timhago chuncheon gaseo 'chuncheon dakgalbi' meogeulkkahago iyagihaeseotgeodeun. mian!
11. TIM: ja, geureom gyehoekdaero chuncheoneuro gabolkka.
12. SUJIN: geurae, "chuncheoneuro gogossing.!!!"

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. (As they leave "Lotte World")
2. CHEOLSU: Tim, your practical jokes are too harsh! I nearly died when I was on the Viking.
3. TIM: I am sorry. I'll do whatever you want to do.
4. CHEOLSU: Really? I actually feel a bit hungry.
5. TIM: Really? Should we eat something?
6. CHEOLSU: I want an extra-large serving of black bean noodles!
7. TIM: Of course. Just as I expected! How about you, Sujin?
8. SUJIN: I think we should go for spicy, marinated chicken as we discussed earlier!
9. TIM: Then should we go for Chuncheon spicy, marinated chicken as we decided on earlier?
10. CHEOLSU: As we decided on earlier? When did we do that? Then why did you even ask me?
11. SUJIN: Actually, Tim and I talked about going to Chuncheon to eat spicy, marinated chicken. Sorry!
12. TIM: Then should we go to Chuncheon like we planned?
13. CHEOLSU AND SUJIN: Sure! Let's head to Chuncheon!

CONT'D OVER

14. (He starts the car engine.)

VOCABULARY

Hangul	Romanization	English	Class
잘못하다	jalmot-hada	to make a mistake	verb
정하다	jeonghada	to decide, to fix	verb
계획	gyehoek	plan, arrangement, schedule	noun
대신에	daesine	instead of, in place of	adverb
고고씽!	gogossing	Let's hit the road!	expression
아까	akka	earlier, a while ago	adverb
다	da	all, everything	adverb
물어보다	mureoboda	to ask	verb
예상	yesang	expectation	noun
사실은	sasireun	in fact, as a matter of fact	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

이번에는 내가 잘못했어. 미안해. I beoneneun naega jalmothaetseo. Mianhae. "I made a mistake this time. I'm sorry."	뭐 먹을지 정했어요? mwo meogeulji jeonghaesseoyo? "Did you decide what to eat?"
내일 어디에 갈 계획이야? naeil eodi-e gal gyehoegiya? "Where are you planning to go tomorrow?"	내년에 특별한 계획 있어요? naebyeone teukbyeol-han gyehoek isseoyo? "Do you have any special plans for next year?"

돌 대신에 물이 통하는 수로관을 넣어요. Dol daesine muli tonghaneun sorogwaneul neo-eoyo. "We put water-pipes instead of stones."	고고씹! gogossing! "Let's hit the road!"
아까 엄마한테 전화 왔었어. akka eomma-hante jeonhwa wasseotsseo. "I got a phone call from Mom earlier."	다 줄게. da julkke. "I'll give you all."
하나만 물어봐도 돼요? hana-man mureobwado dwaeyo? "Can I ask you a question?"	시험은 내 예상과 다르게 나왔다. Siheomeun nae yesang-gwa dareuge sawatda. "The test wasn't anything like my expectations."
사실은 어제 친구랑 부산에 놀러갔었어. sasireun eoje chingurang busane nolleogasseosseo. "In fact, I went to Busan on a trip with my friend yesterday."	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

* 장난이 심하다 (*jangnani simhada*) "practical joke is harsh"

장난 (*jangnan*) is a noun that literally means "a trick or a practical joke." **심하다** (*simhada*) is a verb that literally means "to be severe," "to be harsh," or "to be extreme." Therefore, 장난이 심하다 (*jangnani simhada*) means "your practical joke is severe or harsh."

For Example:

- 넌 장난이 너무 심해!
Neon jangnani neomu simhae!
"Your practical joke is too harsh!"
- 팀은 다 좋은데 가끔 장난이 너무 심해요...
Timeun da joeunde gakkeum jangnani neomu simhaeyo...
"Tim's a great guy, but sometimes his practical jokes are too harsh..."

3. 장난이 심하면 사람들이 다칠지도 몰라요...

Jangnani simha-myeon saramdeuri dachiljido molrayo...

"If your practical jokes are too harsh, you could hurt the people around you..."

2. 죽을 뻔하다 (*jugeul ppeonhada*) "nearly died" (Review of L10)

죽다 (*jukda*) is a verb that literally means "to die."

ㄹ/을 뻔하다 (*l/eul ppeonhada*) is an expression that means "nearly"/"almost come close to something (happening)." Therefore, 죽을 뻔하다 (*jugeul ppeonhada*) means "nearly died."

Formation: Verb Stem + -ㄹ/을 뻔하다

Rule #1: ㄹ 뻔하다 is attached to verb stems ending in a **vowel** (without a 받침)

Rule #2: 을 뻔하다 is attached to verb stems ending in a **consonant** (with a 받침)

For Example:

1. 나 오늘 아침에 죽을 뻔했어! (죽다 "to be dead" → 죽 + 을 뻔하다 = 죽을 뻔하다)
Na o-neul achime jugeul ppeonhaesseo!
"I nearly died this morning!"
2. 차에 치일 뻔했거든... (치이다 "to be hit" → 치이 + ㄹ 뻔하다 = 치일 뻔하다)
Cha-e chi-il ppeonhaekkeodeun...
"I almost got hit by a car..."
3. 나 어제 죽을 뻔했어!
Na eoje jugeul ppeonhaesseo!
"I almost died yesterday!"
4. 개한테 물릴 뻔했거든... (물리다 "to be bitten" → 물리 + ㄹ 뻔하다 = 물릴 뻔하다)
Gaehante mul-ril ppeonhaekkeodeun...
"I almost got bitten by a dog..."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is about Noun + 대로 "as (Noun) Is/Was/Were" or VST + ㄴ/는 대로 "as VERB + -ing."

그럼 계획한 대로 춘천으로 가볼까...

"Then let's go to Chuncheon as planned..."

계획대로 (gyehoekdaero) "like the plan"

The focus of this lesson is about the two applications of 대로 (daero) "as..." We generally use -대로 (daero) as both a 조사 (josa), meaning a "post-positional particle," and a 의존명사 (uijon-myeongsa), meaning a "bound noun."

Depending on its application (either 조사 (josa) "post-positional particle" or 의존명사 (uijon-myeongsa) "bound noun"), its conjugation rule is also different.

Let's take a look at the two applications of 대로...

Two Applications of 대로 (Daero) "As..."

	1. 조사 (josa) "post-positional particle"	2. 의존명사 (uijon-myeongsa) "bound noun"
Can It Be Dependent?	No! Therefore, it needs a noun or a pronoun before it.	Yes! Therefore, it does not need a noun or a pronoun before it (but it needs VST instead)
How to Use	Noun/pronoun + 대로	* VST + ㄴ/는 대로 (sometimes VST + ㄹ/은 대로)

Example

계획 "a plan" + 대로 =
계획대로 "like the plan"

계획하다 "to plan" + ㄴ or 는
대로 =
계획한 대로 "as we
planned"
계획하는 대로 "as we plan"

*Note: VST + ㄴ 대로 generally indicates "a certain state/circumstance/situation [past tense of verb] in the past"

However, VST + 는 대로 generally indicates "Verb + ing as soon as a certain state/circumstance/situation appears in the present"

First Application of 대로 (Daero) as a 조사 (Josa) "Post-Positional Particle"

Just like another 조사 "post-positional particle," it is followed right after a noun or a pronoun, meaning "like (the NOUN)..."

* NOTE: HOWEVER, its best English translation would be "as verb + ed"; that is, "as planned," "as promised," etc..."

Formation: Noun/Pronoun + 대로

<i>Noun</i>	<i>Noun + 대로</i>	<i>Becomes...</i>	<i>"English"</i>
1. 계획 "a plan"	계획 + 대로	계획대로	"like the plan"
2. 약속 "a promise"	약속 + 대로	약속대로	"like the promise"
3. 법 "the law"	법 + 대로	법대로	"by the law"
4. 제멋 "one's own way"	제멋 + 대로	제멋대로	"as one pleases"
5. 평소 "usual"	평소 + 대로	평소대로	"as usual"

For Example:

1. 그럼 **계획대로** 해 볼까?
Geureom gyehoekdaero hae bolkka?
"Then should we do it like the plan?"
2. 우리 **약속대로** 한국에 가자...
Uri yaksokdaero hanguge gaja...
"Let's visit Korea like we promised..."
3. **법대로** 하자, **법대로**!
Beopdaero haja, beopdaero!
"Let's go by the law, by the law!"
4. 제발 **제멋대로** 행동하지마! (제멋 "one's own feeling/taste" + 대로 = 제멋대로 "as one's own feeling/taste")
Jebal jemeotdaero haengdonghajima!
"Please do not behave as you please!" (=as you like/feel)
5. **평소대로** 하세요... (평소대로 "as usual")
Pyeongsodaero haseyo...
"Please do as you usually would...(=normally)..."

Second Application of 대로 (*Daero*) as a 의존명사 (*Uijon-Myeongsa*) "Bound Noun"

When we use it as 의존명사 "bound noun," it is attached to the verb stem, meaning "as VERB + -ed/as VERB + -ing"/"as (the subject) verb..."

Formation: VST + ㄴ/는 대로 (Sometimes VST + ㄹ은 대로)

Verb Stem + ㄴ/는			
Verb	대로	Becomes...	"English"

1. 말하다 "to talk," "to speak," "to discuss"	말하 + ㄴ 대로	말한 대로	"as discussed"
2. 계획하다 "to plan," "to schedule"	계획하 + ㄴ 대로	계획한 대로	"as planned"
3. 약속하다 "to promise"	약속하 + ㄴ 대로	약속한 대로	"as promised"
4. 물어보다 "to ask," "to question"	물어보 + ㄴ 대로	물어본 대로	"as asked"/"as questioned"

For Example:

1. 그럼 우리 아까 **말한 대로** 하자!
Geureom uri akka malhan daero haja!
"Then let's do it as we discussed earlier!"
2. 그럼 우리 아까 **계획한 대로** 합시다.
Geureom uri akka gyehoekhan daero hapsiha.
"Then let's do it as we planned earlier."
3. 이제 아까 **약속한 대로** 그거 주세요...
Ije akka yaksokhan daero geugeo juseyo...
"Please give me that as you agreed (=promised) earlier..."
4. 저기요. **물어본 대로** 답해 주세요...
Jeogiyo. Mureobon daero dapae juseyo...
"Excuse me. Please answer according to the question..." (=as I asked you...)

Examples from This Dialogue

1. 우리 아까 말한 대로 닭갈비도 괜찮을 것 같아!
Uri akka malhan daero dakgalbi gwaenchaneul geot gata!
 "I think it's a good idea to go for spicy, marinated chicken as discussed earlier!"
2. 우리 정한 대로 춘천 닭갈비 먹을까?
Uri jeonghan daero chuncheon dakgalbi meogeulkka?
 "Should we go for Chuncheon spicy, marinated chicken as we decided on?"
3. 그럼 계획대로 춘천으로 가볼까...
Geureom gyehoek-daero chuncheon-euro gabolkka...
 "Then should we go to Chuncheon like we planned..."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

춘천 (*chuncheon*) "Chuncheon"

1. About 춘천 (*chuncheon*) "Chuncheon"

춘천 (*chuncheon*) "Chuncheon" is the capital of 강원도 (*gangwondo*) "Gangwon Province"

The city of 춘천 is known as "the land of mountains, lakes, and rivers."

춘천 has become a popular destination for many Asian tourists as it was featured in a popular Korean drama called "Winter Sonata."

2. 기온 (*gion*) "climate"

The average temperature in the city is 11 °C.

The highest in summer was 36.6 °C.

The lowest in winter was -28 °C.

3. 교통편 (*gyotongpyeon*) "transportation"

We call the main train station in 춘천 남춘천역 (*Namchuncheon-yeok*) "Namchuncheon Station," which is 종착역 (*jongchak-yeok*) "the terminus" of the 경춘선 (*gyeongchun-seon*) "Gyeongchun Railway Line."

Since riding in taxis in Korea doesn't cost much, taxis are the best option for short trips throughout the town. It might be cheaper to ride buses, but they can be complicated and very crowded. (Bus fare is 1,100원(\$1.00 USD).)

4. 숙박 (*sukbak*) "accommodation"

We can find hotels, motels, and inns in many places throughout 춘천. They vary in price depending on their location and quality. Staying in hotels can cost approximately from 60,000 원(\$50 USD) to 100,000원(\$90 USD). Staying in motels can cost approximately from 30,000 원(\$25 USD) to 60,000원(\$50 USD). Staying in inns can cost around 2-30,000원(\$20-25 USD).

5. 음식 (*eumsik*) "food"

춘천 닭갈비 (*chuncheon dakalbi*) "Chuncheon spicy, marinated chicken" is a grilled chicken dish with a lot of vegetables and marinated in a spicy 고추장 소스 (*gochujang soseu*) "Korean spicy sauce." 춘천 닭갈비 (*chuncheon dak-gal-bi*) "Chuncheon spicy, marinated chicken" is a famous Korean dish and a favorite for many Koreans.

- **춘천 막국수 (*chuncheon makguksu*) "Korean buckwheat noodles"** is made from the buckwheat crop. It's first soaked and then ground into a paste. 춘천 막국수 is usually served with boiled beef or pork, and it can taste a bit spicy for some foreigners. There is even a 막국수 박물관 (*makguksu bakmulgwon*) "a museum of Korean buckwheat noodles" in 춘천 "Chuncheon."

LESSON NOTES

Lower Intermediate S2 #13

Are You Too Busy to Eat Korean Food?

CONTENTS

- 2 Korean Hangul
- 3 Romanization
- 4 English
- 5 Vocabulary
- 6 Sample Sentences
- 7 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 8 Grammar
- 10 Cultural Insight

13

KOREAN HANGUL

1. (차 안에서)
2. 팀: 철수야, 너 여친 안 부를 거야?
3. 철수: 너희도 알다시피 요즘 고은이가 많이 바쁘잖아.
4. 수진: 그래도, 고은이도 같이 가면 좋을텐데. 한번 전화해봐.
5. 철수: 회사에서 살다시피하는 아이라서 갈 수 있을지 모르겠네. 한번 전화해 볼까?
6. (통화 중)
7. 고은: 여보세요?
8. 철수: 고은아! 아직도 일하고 있는 거야?
9. 고은: 응. 너도 알다시피 사장님이 퇴근해야 나도 퇴근할 수 있잖아.
10. 철수: 나도 알지.
11. 고은: 근데 조금 있으면 퇴근할 수 있을 것 같아.
12. 철수: 그래? 사실 팀이랑 수진이랑 춘천에 닭갈비 먹으러 가거든.
13. 고은: 뭐! 춘천 닭갈비! 맛있겠다.
14. 철수: 혹시 너도 같이 갈 수 있을까 해서 전화했어.
15. 고은: 그래! 같이 가자.

CONT'D OVER

16. 철수: 그럼 조금 이따 보자. 끝어.

ROMANIZATION

1. (cha aneseo)
2. TIM: cheolsuya, neo yeochin an bureul geoya?
3. CHEOLSU: neohuido aldasipi yojeum goeuniga mani bappeujana.
4. SUJIN: geuraedo, goeunido gachi gamyeon joeultende. hanbeon jeonhwahaebwa.
5. CHEOLSU: hoesaeseo saldasipihaneun airaseo gal su isseulji moreugenne. hanbeon jeonhwahae bolkka?
6. (tonghwa jung)
7. GOEUN: yeoboseyo?
8. CHEOLSU: goeuna! ajikdo ilhago inneun geoya?
9. GOEUN: eung. neodo aldasipi sajangnimi toegeunhaeya nado toegeunhal su itjana.
10. CHEOLSU: nado alji.
11. GOEUN: geunde jogeum isseumyeon toegeunhal su isseul geot gata.

CONT'D OVER

12. CHEOLSU: geurae? sasil timirang sujirang chuncheone dakgalbi meogeureo gageodeun.
13. GOEUN: mwo! chuncheon dakgalbi! masitgetda.
14. CHEOLSU: hoksi neodo gachi gal su iseulkka haeseo jeonhwahaeseo.
15. GOEUN: geurae! gachi gaja.
16. CHEOLSU: geureom jogeum itta boja. kkeuneo.

ENGLISH

1. (Inside the car)
2. TIM: Cheolsu, aren't you going to call your girlfriend?
3. CHEOLSU: As you know, Goeun is really busy nowadays.
4. SUJIN: I know, but it would be great to go with Goeun. You should give her a call.
5. CHEOLSU: She practically lives in the office, so I don't know whether she'll be able to go. Should I give her a call anyway?
6. (Dialing)
7. GOEUN: Hello?
8. CHEOLSU: Goeun, are you still working?

CONT'D OVER

9. GOEUN: Yes, as you know, I can't leave the office until our CEO calls it a day.
10. CHEOLSU: I know.
11. GOEUN: But I should be able to leave soon.
12. CHEOLSU: Really? I'm actually going to Chuncheon with Tim and Sujin to eat spicy, marinated chicken.
13. GOEUN: What! Chuncheon spicy, marinated chicken! That sounds so good!
14. CHEOLSU: I called to see whether you could go with us.
15. GOEUN: Sure! Let's go together.
16. CHEOLSU: Then I'll see you soon. Bye.
17. (He hangs up the phone and drives a car.)

VOCABULARY

Hangul	Romanization	English	Class
부르다	bureuda	to call, to call for	verb
이따	itta	later today, later, a moment later	adverb
혹시	hoksi	by any chance	adverb
퇴근하다	toegeunhada	to finish work, to leave the office	verb
사장님	sajangnim	president, boss, CEO	noun
한번...해 보다	hanbeon...hae boda	to try something (out)	phrase

회사	hoesa	company	noun
같이	gachi	together	adverb
바쁘다	bappeuda	to be busy	verb
끊다	kkeunta	to hang up (the phone)	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

나를 아줌마라고 부르지마! nareul ajummarago bureujima! "Don't call me an Ajumma!"	이따 전화할게. itta jeonhwahalge. "I'll call you later."
혹시 얼음 있어요? hokssi eoreum isseoyo? "Do you have ice by any chance?"	언제 퇴근해요? eonje toegeunhaeyo? "When do you get off work?"
지금은 사장님이 안 계십니다. jigeum-eun sajangnim-i an gyesimnida. "The president isn't in the office now."	한번 해 봐! Hanbeon hae bwa! "Come on! Try it!"
내 회사의 크리스마스 파티에 내 부모님을 초대했다. nae hoesau keuriseumaseu patie nae bumonimeul chodaehaetta. "I invited my parents to my company Christmas party."	너의 회사는 어디 있어? neoeui hoesaneun eodi isseo? "Where is your company located?"
우리 파티에 같이 가야 해. uri patie gachi gaya hae. "We should go to the party together."	같이 밥 먹으러 가요. gachi bam meogeureo gayo. "Let's go eat together."

저는 부모님과 같이 살고 있습니다. jeoneun bumonimgwa gachi salgo isseumnida. "I'm living with my parents."	제 선생님은 바쁩니다. je seonsaengnimeun bappeumnida. "My teacher is busy."
이번 주는 정말 바빠요. ibeen jjuneun jeongmal bappayo. "I'm very busy this week."	전화 끊지 마세요. Jeonhwa kkeunji maseyo. "Please don't hang up."

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

1. 여친 (yeochin) "girlfriend"

여친 (yeochin) is a commonly used shortened word that comes from **여자 친구** (yeoja chingu) = **여친** (yeo-chin) "girlfriend." **여자** (yeoja) is a noun meaning "a female," "a woman," or "a girl," and **친구** (chingu) is a noun meaning "a friend." Therefore, **여자 친구** (yeoja chingu) = **여친** (yeo-chin) "girlfriend."

* Note: The same applies for **남친** (namchin) = **남자 친구** (namja chiungu) "boyfriend."

* A review from Lesson 6, **절친** (jeol-chin) = **절친한 친구** (jeolchinhan chingu) "best friend."

For Example:

- 제 여친을 소개합니다.
Je yeochineul sogaehamnida.
"This is my girlfriend."
- 전 제 여친을 너무나 사랑합니다.
Jeon je yeochineul neomuna sarang-hamnida.
"I really love my girlfriend."

2. 팀이랑 수진이랑 (timirang sujirang) "with Tim and Sujin"

The particle **-(이)랑** ((i)rang), meaning "and" or "with," connects two or more nouns in a sentence. It also contains a meaning of "in the company of someone."

Formation: Noun + (이)랑 "and," "with"

	Noun That Ends <u>with a 받침</u> - Noun + 이랑	Noun That Ends <u>without a 받침</u> - Noun + 랑
Noun	1. 팀 "Tim" + 이랑 = 팀이랑 "with Tim" 2. 비빔밥 "Bibimbab" + 이랑 = 비빔밥이랑... "Bibimbab and..."	1. 데비 "Debbie" + 랑 = 데비 랑 "with Debbie" 2. 김치찌개 "Kimchi stew" + 랑 = 김치찌개랑... "Kimchi stew and..."

For Example:

1. 나 지금 팀이랑 데비랑 (함께) 춘천에 가고 있어.
Na jigeum timirang debirang (hamkke) chuncheone gago isseo.
 "I am on my way to Chuncheon with Tim and Debbie right now."
2. 저기요. 여기 비빔밥이랑 김치찌개 주세요...
Jeogiyo. Yeogi bibimbabirang kimchi-jjigae juseyo...
 "Excuse me. We'd like a bibimbab and a kimchi stew..."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is about VST + -다시피, Meaning "As You + Verb..."

너희도 알다시피 요즘 고은이가 많이 바쁘잖아.

Neohuido aldasipi go-euniga mani bappeujana.

"As you know, Goeun is really busy nowadays."

알다시피 (Aldasipi) "As You Know..."

The focus of this lesson is about VST + 다시피 (*dasipi*), which we often use with:

- 1. Perceptual verbs** such as 알다, meaning "to know"; 이해하다, meaning "to understand"; 감지하다, meaning "to sense"; and so on.

2. **Sensory verbs** such as 보다, meaning "to see"; 듣다, meaning "to listen"; 냄새를 맡다, meaning "to smell"; 말하다, meaning "to speak"; 만지다, meaning "to touch"; 느끼다, meaning "to feel"; and so on.

Therefore, we can translate this pattern of expression "as you know," "as you see," "as you can feel," and "as you (can) VERB..."

First, let's take a look at its conjugation rules.

Conjugation Rule

Verb Stem + 다시피 (*dasipi*) "as you (can) [verb]..."

Verb	Verb Stem + 다시피	Becomes...	"English"
1. 알다 (<i>alda</i>) "to know"	알 + 다시피	알다시피	"as you know"
2. 보다 (<i>boda</i>) "to see"	보 + 다시피	보다시피	"as you can see"
3. 느끼다 (<i>neu-ggida</i>) "to feel"	느끼 + 다시피	느끼다시피	"as you (can) feel"
4. 말했다 (<i>malhaetdda</i>) "said"/"spoke"	말했 + 다시피	말했다시피	"as I said (earlier)"

* Note: Present Verb Stem + -다시피 is interchangeable with Verb Stem + 는 바와 같이 (*bawa gachi*).

For Example:

- 너도 **알다시피** 한국어 공부는 KoreanClass101.com에서 하는게 제일 효과적이야!
Neodo aldasipi hangugeo gongbuneun KoreanClass101.com eseo haneunge jeil hyogwajeokiya!
 "As you know, KoreanClass101.com is the most effective way to learn Korean."

2. 너가 **보다시피** 이 차는 낡았어!
Neoga bodasipi i chaneun nalgasseo!
 "As you can see, this car is very old!"

3. **너도 느끼다시피** 한국어는 그렇게 어렵지 않아...
Neodo neuggidasipi hangugeoneun geureoke eoryeopji ana...
 "As you can see (feel), Korean is not that hard (to learn)..."

4. 내가 전에 **말했다시피** 그 장소는 위험해!
Naega jeone malhaeddasipi geu jangsoneun wiheomhae!
 "As I said earlier, that place is dangerous!"

Examples from This Dialogue:

1. 너희도 **알다시피** 요즘 고은이가 많이 바쁘잖아.
Neohido aldasipi go-euniga mani bappeujana.
 "As you know, Goeun is really busy nowadays."

2. 회사에서 **살다시피**하는 아이라서 갈 수 있을지 모르겠네.
Hoesa-eseo saldasipihaneun ai-raseo gal su isseulji moreugetne.
 "She practically lives in the office, so I don't know whether she'll be able to go."

3. 너도 **알다시피** 사장님이 퇴근해야 나도 퇴근할 수 있잖아.
Neodo aldasipi sajang-nimi toe-geunhaeya nado toe-geunhal su itjana.
 "As you know, I can't leave the office until our CEO calls it a day."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

* 한국 회사 근무 (*hanguk hoesa geunmu*) "working at a Korean company"

In Korea, it's very common for company employees to stay at work until the company's president or CEO leaves for the day.

Here are some helpful words that we use when "working at a Korean company."

For Example:

<i>Hangeul</i>	<i>Romanization</i>	<i>"English"</i>
회사원	<i>hoesawon</i>	"employee, (salaried) worker"
사장	<i>sajang</i>	"the president (of a company), boss, CEO"
회사 업무	<i>hoesa eom-mu</i>	"company/business affairs"
회사 근무 시간	<i>hoesa geunmu sigan</i>	"working hours"
출근	<i>chulgeun</i>	"getting/coming to work"
출근 시간	<i>chulgeun sigan</i>	"the time to get to work"
퇴근	<i>toegeun</i>	"leaving the office/work," "getting off work"
퇴근 시간	<i>toegeun sigan</i>	"the time to leave work"

LESSON NOTES

Lower Intermediate S2 #14

It Doesn't Do to be Rude in Korea

CONTENTS

- 2 Korean Hangul
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 8 Grammar
- 10 Cultural Insight

14

KOREAN HANGUL

1. (차 안에서)
2. 팀: 철수야!! 전화 끊을 때 고은이한테 좀 부드럽게 말을 하지. 뭐, "사랑해" 그런 말도 하고.
3. 철수: 뭐, "사랑해!?" 난 그렇게 얘기 하는게 좀 힘들어!
4. 팀: 여자친구한테 말을 조심하지 않으면 안 돼.
5. 수진: 맞아! 여자들은 다 마음에 담아 놓는다.
6. 철수: 아니야. 우리 고은이는 '나쁜 남자'가 이상형이야. 이런 나의 모습을 좋아하지. 푸하하하.
7. 수진: 뭐!? 하하
8. 철수: 근데, 수진아! 팀이 평소에 잘해 줘?
9. 수진: 그럼. 팀은 나한테 잘하지 않으면 안 돼. 왜냐면 나처럼 완벽한 여자를 여친으로 두었으니까, 그렇지 팀?.
10. 팀: 어. (수진이 눈치를 보며) 맞아! 나는 수진이한테 충성하지 않으면 안 돼. "충성!"
11. 수진: 하하하. 이것 봐. 어, 저기 고은이가 있네, "고은아, 여기야.!"

ROMANIZATION

1. (cha aneseo)

CONT'D OVER

2. TIM: cheolsuya!! jeonhwa kkeuneul ttae goeunihante jom budeureopge mareul haji. mwo, "saranghae" geureon maldo hago.
3. CHEOLSU: mwo, "saranghae!?" nan geureoke yaegi haneunge jom himdeureo!
4. TIM: yeojachinguhante mareul josimhaji aneumyeon an dwae.
5. SUJIN: maja! yeojadeureun da maeume dama nonneunda.
6. CHEOLSU: aniya. uri goeunineun 'nappeun namja'ga isanghyeongiya. ireon naui moseubeul joahaji. puhahaha.
7. SUJIN: mwo!? haha
8. CHEOLSU: geunde, sujina! timi pyeongsoe jalhae jwo?
9. SUJIN: geureom. timeun nahante jalhaji aneumyeon an dwae. waenyamyeon nacheoreom wanbyeokhan yeojareul yeochineuro dueosesunikka, geureochi tim?.
10. TIM: eo maja! naneun sujinihante chungseonghaji aneumyeon an dwae. "chungseong!"
11. SUJIN: hahaha. igeot bwa. eo, jeogi goeuniga inne, "goeuna, yeogiya.!"

ENGLISH

1. (Inside the car)

CONT'D OVER

2. TIM: Hey, Cheolsu! You should've been nicer to Goeun when you were hanging up. You could've said "I love you" or something.

3. CHEOLSU: What? I love you? It's difficult for me to say something like that.

4. TIM: You really have to watch what you say to your girlfriend.

5. SUJIN: Tim is right! Women tend to take everything to heart.

6. CHEOLSU: No. Goeun is different. She likes bad boys. That's why she likes me. Ha ha!

7. SUJIN: What? Ha ha!

8. CHEOLSU: Sujin, what about Tim? Does he treat you well all the time?

9. SUJIN: Of course! Tim has to treat me well because I'm the perfect girlfriend. Right, Tim?

10. TIM: Err.(hesitating) Right! I have to be loyal to Sujin all the time. Loyal!

11. SUJIN: Ha ha ha. See! Eh! Goeun is over there, "Goeun, over here.!"

12. (Pleasant background music)

VOCABULARY

Hangul	Romanization	English	Class
한테	hante	to, toward (a person)	postposition
완벽한	wanbyeokan	perfect	adjective

평소에	pyeongso-e	usually, under normal circumstances	adverb
모습	moseup	looks, figure, shape	noun
담다	damtta	to put in	verb
마음	maeum	heart	noun
맞아!	Maja!	Yes!, Exactly!	expression
조심하다	josimhada	to be careful, to be cautious	verb
말	mal	word	noun
두다	duda	to have, to keep (someone/ something)	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

저한테 이야기하세요. jeo-hante iyagihaseyo. "Talk to me (about that)."	완벽하게 맞는 걸 찾는 것은 거의 불가능 하다. wanbyeokage manneun geol channeun geoseun geoui bulganeung hada. "It is almost impossible to find the perfect fit."
발리는 완벽한 휴양지이다. balineun wanbyeokan hyuyanjiida. "Bali is the perfect holiday place."	평소에는 술을 잘 마시지 않아요. pyeongsoeneun sureul jal masiji anayo. "Usually, I don't drink beer often."

평소에 하루에 몇 시간씩 일해요? pyeongso-e haru-e myeot siganssik ilhaeyo? "Usually, how many hours a day do you work?"	한국의 100원짜리 동전 뒷면에서 이순신 장군의 모습을 볼 수 있습니다. hangugui 100wonjjari dongjeon dwinmyeoneseo isunsin janggunui moseubeul bol su itseumnida. "There is a picture of General Yi Sunshin on the back of the 100 Korean won coin."
사람들은 그의 남루한 겉모습에 그를 경시하였다. sa-ram-deul-eun geu-ui nam-ru-han geot-mo-seu-be geu-reul gyeong-si-ha-yeot-da. "People belittled him for his ragged appearance."	접시에 과일을 담아 주세요. jeopssie gwaireul dama juseyo. "Please put the fruits on the plate."
그런 기사를 읽으면 마음이 훈훈해진다. geureon gisareul ilgeumyeon maeumi hunhunhaejinda. "Reading an article like that warms my heart."	네, 맞아요. ne, majayo. "Yes. That's right."
어두우니까 조심하세요. eodu-unikka josimhaseyo. "It's dark, so be careful."	니 말에 상처 받았어. ni mare sangcheo badasseo. "I was hurt by your words."
부모님은 저를 곁에 두고 싶어합니다. bu-mo-nim-eun jeo-reul gyeot-e du-go sip-eo-hamnida. "My parents want to keep me by their side."	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

마음에 담아 놓다 (*ma-eume dama nota*) "to take (what someone says) to heart"

Let's break down the phrase:

- 마음에 (*ma-eume*) is a phrase that means "to heart"
- 담아 (*dama*) came from 담다, which means "to put into"
- 놓다 (*nota*) is a verb that means "to place"/"to keep"/"to set"/"to put"

Therefore, 마음에 담아 놓다 literally means "to put (something/object) in the heart" and contextually means "to take what someone says to heart."

For Example:

1. 나한테 함부로 말하지 마! 난 마음에 다 담아 놔...
Nahante hamburo malhaji ma! Nan ma-eume da dama nwa...
"Be careful what you say to me! I usually take what someone says to heart..."
2. 내가 하려는 말들 마음에 담아 놓지 마...
Naega haryeoneun maldeul ma-eume dama nochi ma...
"Please do not take what I'm trying to say to you to heart..."

이상형 (*i-sang-hyeong*) "ideal type (of person)"

Let's break down the word:

- 이상 (*i-sang*) is used as a noun meaning "an ideal"
- 형 (*hyeong*) is a noun that means "a type"
- Therefore, 이상형 (*i-sang-hyeong*) means "ideal type (of person)"

For Example:

1. 당신의 이상형을 말해 주세요...
Dangsinui isang-hyeong-eul malhae juseyo...
"Tell me who your ideal is..."
2. 내 이상형은 재밌는 사람입니다.
Nae isanghyeongeun jaemineun saram-imnida.
"My ideal type is someone with a sense of humor."

충성하다 (*chung-seong-hada*) "to be loyal" or "to be faithful"

Let's break down the word:

- 충성 (*chung-seong*) is a noun that means "loyalty toward" or "being loyal to..."
- 하다 (*hada*) is a verb that means "to do"
- Therefore, 충성하다 (*chung-seong-hada*) means "to be faithful to" or "to be loyal to..."

For Example:

1. 전 국가에 충성을 다하는 군인입니다.
Jeon gukka-e chung-seong-eul dahaneun gunin-imnida.
"I am a soldier who loyally serves my country."
2. 내 남친은 언제나 나한테 충성이야!
Nae manchineun eonjena nahante chung-seong-iya!
"My boyfriend is always faithful to me!"

GRAMMAR

-지 않으면 안 돼 (-*ji aneumyeon an doe*) "have to (= must) [verb]"

The focus of today's lesson is about **VST + 지 않으면 안 되다(돼)**, which we often use to emphasize or stress the need for [verb].

We translate this expression as **"have to [verb] or must [verb],"** which is implicit in duty, obligation, or responsibility, etc.

First, let's break down the phrase:

- **않으면 (*aneumyeon*)** is a phrase that uses the verb **안다 (*anta*)** "isn't"/"don't"/"doesn't do" + **으면 (*eumyeon*)** "if... (then...)"; therefore, **않으면** literally means "if you don't do it"
- **안 (*an*)** is an adverb meaning "NOT"
- **되다 (*doeda*)** is a verb meaning "to be" or "to become"

Therefore, all together, **않으면 안 되다 (*aneumyeon an doeda*)** literally means "if you don't do it, it does NOT do/work/become," which contextually means "if you don't do it, it won't be good for you" = "you have to" or "must do it."

Conjugation Rule

Verb stem + -지 않으면 안 되다 (*ji aneumyeon an doeda*) "shouldn't not + (verb)" = "have to/ must + (verb)"

Verb	Verb Stem + 지 않으면 안 되다	Becomes...	"English"
1. 충성하다 (chung-seong-hada) "to be faithful"	충성하 + 지 않으면 안 되다	충성하지 않으면 안 되다	"If you are not faithful, it won't be good." = "You have to be faithful."
2. 말(을) 듣다 (mareul deutta) "to obey"	말을 듣 + 지 않으면 안 돼	말을 듣지 않으면 안 돼	"If you do not obey (my words), it won't be good." = "You have to obey (my words)."
3. 잘하다 (jalhada) "to treat (a person) well"/"to be kind to (a person)"	잘하 + 지 않으면 안 되다	잘하지 않으면 안 되다	"If you do not treat (a person) well, it won't be good (for you)." = "You have to treat (a person) well."
4. 조심하다 (josimhada) "to be careful"/"beware of"/"to watch out"	조심하 + 지 않으면 안 돼	조심하지 않으면 안 돼	"If you are not careful, it won't be good." = "You must/ have to be careful."

For Example:

1. 군인은 명령에 충성하지 않으면 안 됩니다. (1. 충성하 + 지 않으면 안 되다)
Gunineun myeong-ryeong-e chung-seong-haji aneumyeon an doemnida.
"If soldiers do not follow orders, it won't be good." = "Soldiers must follow orders."

2. 아이들은 부모님 **말씀을 듣지** 않으면 안 되요... (2. 말[씀]을 듣 + 지 않으면 안 되다)
Aideureun bumonim malsseumeul deujji aneumyeon an doeyo...
 "If children do not listen to their parents, it won't be good for them." = "Children must listen to their parents."
3. 남에게 **잘하지** 않으면 안 됩니다. (3. 잘하 + 지 않으면 안 되다)
Namege jalhaji aneumyeon an doemnida.
 "If you don't treat others well, it won't be good." = "You have to treat others well."
4. 나쁜 사람들을 **조심하지** 않으면 안 됩니다. (4. 조심하 + 지 않으면 안 되다)
Nappeun saramdeureul josimhaji aneumyeon an doemnida.
 "If you are not careful of bad people, it won't be good for you." = "You have to watch out for bad people."

Examples from This Dialogue

1. 여자친구한테 말을 더 조심하지 않으면 안 돼.
Yejachin-guhante mareul deo josimhaji aneumyeon an dwae.
 "You have to watch what you say to your girlfriend!"
2. 팀은 나한테 잘하지 않으면 안 돼.
Timeun nahante jalhaji aneumyeon an dwae.
 "Tim must treat me well."
3. 나는 수진이한테 충성하지 않으면 안 돼.
Naneun sujinihante chung-seong-haji aneumyeon an dwae.
 "I must be loyal to Sujin all the time."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

한국의 데이트 문화 (*han-gugui deiteu munhwa*) "The Dating Culture in Korea"

Here are some general rules to follow when dating in Korea:

1. **No going Dutch!** Males are always expected to treat the females. Korean males are expected to pay for everything when they go on a date: the meal, movie tickets, drinks, etc. (This attitude has been changing a bit recently though.)
2. **Dress up!** Korean females expect males to look nice and wear something other than jeans and a t-shirt when they are on a date.
3. **Mind your manners!** Many Korean females like to meet someone with good etiquette and manners.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Intermediate S2 #15

Your Dream of Eating Korean Food Has Come True at Last

CONTENTS

- 2 Korean Hangul
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 7 Grammar
- 9 Cultural Insight

15

KOREAN HANGUL

1. 수진: 와. 춘천이다!
2. 철수: 와. 결국 춘천까지 오고 말았구나.!
3. 아주머니: 어서 들어와요. 뭘로 드릴까요?
4. 팀: 아주머니! 우선 닭갈비 사 인분 주세요.
5. 철수: 사 인분!? 에이. 그걸로 모자라지. 아주머니, 육 인분 주세요.
6. 아주머니: 에고. 어찌지. 사 인분밖에 안 남았는데..
7. 철수: 네? 그럼 닭갈비 사 인분하고 볶음밥 사 인분 주세요.
8. 수진: 그걸 다 먹을 수 있어?
9. 철수: 물론이지!
10. 아주머니: 알았어요, 그럼 조금만 기다려요..
11. 철수: 아! 깜빡 잊고 말았네! 아주머니. 여기 막국수도 사 인분 주세요.
12. 팀: 야! 결국, 네가 십이 인분을 시키고 말았구나.. 너가 책임지고 다 먹어야 해!
13. 철수: 걱정하지 마! 내가 다 먹을게!

ROMANIZATION

1. SUJIN: wa. chuncheonida!

CONT'D OVER

2. CHEOLSU: wa. gyeolguk chuncheonkkaji ogo maratguna.!
3. AJUMEONI: eoseo deureowayo. mwollo deurilkkayo?
4. TIM: ajumeoni! useon dakgalbi sa inbun juseyo.
5. CHEOLSU: sa inbun!? ei. geugeollo mojaraji. ajumeoni, yuk ginbun juseyo.
6. AJUMEONI: ego. eoijeoji. sa inbunbakke an namanneunde..
7. CHEOLSU: ne? geureom dakgalbi sa inbunhago bokkeumbap sa inbun juseyo.
8. SUJIN: geugeol da meogeul su iseo?
9. CHEOLSU: mulloniji!
10. AJUMEONI: arasseoyo, geureom jogeumman gidaryeoyo..
11. CHEOLSU: a! kkamppak itgo maranne! ajumeoni. yeogi makguksudo sa inbun juseyo.
12. TIM: ya! gyeolguk, nega sibi inbuneul sikigo maratguna.. neoga chaegimjigo da meogeoya hae!
13. CHEOLSU: geokjeonghaji ma! naega da meogeulge!

ENGLISH

1. SUJIN: Wow! It's Chuncheon!

CONT'D OVER

2. CHEOLSU: Wow! We ended up coming to Chuncheon!
3. OWNER: Please come in. What should I bring for you?
4. TIM: Ma'am! To start with, we'd like to have four servings of the spicy, marinated chicken.
5. CHEOLSU: Only four servings? No. That won't be enough! Ma'am, please bring us six servings.
6. OWNER: Oh no... We only have four servings left.
7. CHEOLSU: Really? Then please bring us four servings of spicy, marinated chicken and four servings of stir-fried rice.
8. SUJIN: Can you eat all of that?
9. CHEOLSU: Of course!
10. OWNER: Got it! Just a minute.
11. CHEOLSU: Ah! I just forgot one more thing! Ma'am, we'd like to have four servings of buckwheat noodles as well.
12. TIM: Hey! So you ended up ordering twelve servings of food. You better eat all of it!
13. CHEOLSU: Don't worry! I'll eat all of it!

VOCABULARY

Hangul	Romanization	English	Class
--------	--------------	---------	-------

모자라다	mojarada	to be short, to be insufficient	verb
잊다	itda	to forget	verb
시키다	sikida	to order	verb
결국	gyeolguk	eventually, finally	adverb
다	da	all, everything	adverb
밖에	bakke	only, no more than	preposition
책임지다	chaegimjida	to take responsibility	verb
볶음밥	bok-geumbap	fried rice	noun
드리다	deurida	to give (humble)	verb
걱정하다	geokjjeonghada	to worry, to be worried	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

우리는 돈이 조금 모자라요. Urineun doni jogeum mojarayo. "We are slightly short of money."	잊지 말고 전화 해! itji malgo jeonhwa hae! "Don't forget to call me!"
오늘은 김치찌개를 시킬까? oneureun gimchijjigaereul sikilkka? "Shall we order kimchi stew today?"	뭐 시킬까요? mwo sikilkkayo? "What shall we order?"
도망쳐도 결국엔 잡힐 거예요. domangchyeodo gyeolguk-en japil geo-yeyo. "Even if you run away, you're eventually going to get caught."	다 줄게. da julkke. "I'll give you all."

저는 오백원밖에 없어요. jeoneun obaekwonbakke eopsseoyo. "I have only 500 won."	큰 사고가 났지만, 아무도 책임지는 사람이 없었다. "Big accident came out but no one took responsibility."
너가 모든 책임을 짊어져야 한다니 유감이구나. neo-ga mo-deun chaek-im-eul jil-meo-jyeo-ya han-da-ni yu-gam-i-gu-na. "I am sorry that you have to shoulder all the responsibility."	저는 김치 볶음밥을 좋아해요. Jeoneun gimchi bok-guembabeul joahaeyo. "I love Kimchi fried rice."
이 목걸이는 여왕님께 드리는 선물입니다. i mokgeori-neun yeowang-nim-kke deurineun seonmul-imnida. "This necklace is a present for the queen."	선생님께 선물을 드렸다. seonsaengnimkkae seonmuleul deuryeotda. "I gave a present to my teacher."
걱정하지 마세요. 살아서 돌아올게요. geokjeonghaji maseyo. saraseo doraolkkeyo. "Don't worry. I will come back alive."	이건 제가 걱정할 필요가 없는 문제예요. igeon jega geokjeonghal piryoga eomneun munjeyeyo. "It's a problem that I don't have to worry about."

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

1. 인분 (*in-bun*) "portion (or serving) of food"

We often use this word, 인분 (*in-bun*) "portion/serving of food," when you order a "portion/serving of food for a number of people" at any Korean restaurant.

*Note: Please refer to Absolute Beginner Season 2 Lesson 10 to learn more about Sino-Korean Numbers and this system's counting units.

 **Formation: (Name of food) + Sino-Korean Numbers + 인분 = "a number of portion/serving of (name of food)"**

For Example:

1. 불고기 일 인분 주세요...
Bulgogi il inbun juseyo...
"Please bring us one serving of bulgogi..."
2. 여기 막국수 삼 인분 주세요...
Yeogi makguksu sam inbun juseyo...
"Please bring us three servings of Korean buckwheat noodles."

2. 깜빡 (*kkamppak*) "in a flash", "for a moment" or "just"

We often use the word 깜빡 (*kkamppak*) right before a verb in order to emphasize the following verb.

For Example:

1. 미안해요, 제가 깜빡했어요...
Mianhaeyo, jega kkamppakhaesseoyo...
"I am sorry. I've just forgot."
2. 미안, 전화하는 걸 깜빡했어!
Mian, jeonhwahaneun geol kkamppakhaesseo!
"Sorry. I just forgot to give you a call!"

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is about "Verb Stem + 고 말다," an Expression That Indicates "an Action That Is Done or Happened Unintentionally."

결국, 네가 십이 인분을 시키고 말았구나...

Gyeolguk, nega sibi inbuneul sikigo maratguna...

"In the end, you (unintentionally) ordered twelve servings of food..."

Verb Stem + -고 말다 (*-go malda*)

We often use the construction VST + -고 말다 (*-go malda*) to indicate "a sense of dissatisfaction or misfortune" about the way things went.

In many sentences, **Verb Stem + -고 말다** emphasizes **본동사** (*bondongsa*), which is "the main verb."

Let's take a look at the conjugation rule.

Conjugation Rule

Verb Stem + 고 말다 (*go malda*) "something was done/happened (VERB) (unintentionally)..."

For Example:

Verb	Verb Stem + 고 말다	Becomes...	"English"
1. 오다 "to come"	오 + 고 말다	오고 말다	"ended up coming (somewhere)"
2. 잊다 "to forget"	잊 + 고 말다	잊고 말다	"ended up forgetting (something)"
3. 시키다 "to order"	시키 + 고 말다	시키고 말다	"ended up ordering (something)"
4. 되다 "to be"/"to become"	되 + 고 말다	되고 말다	"ended up becoming (someone)"

For Example:

1. 우리 결국엔 한국까지 오고 말았네! (오 + 고 말다 => 오고 말다)
Wuri gyeolguken hanguk-kkaji ogo maratne!
"We ended up coming to Korea!"
2. 아~ 또 깜빡 잊고 말았네! (잊 + 고 말다 => 잊고 말다)
A~ ddo kkamppak itko maratne!
"Oh no! I've just forgotten it again!"

3. 자장면, 짬뽕, 불고기, 비빔밥... 결국, 다 시키고 말았구나! (**시키 + 고 말다 => 시키고 말다**)
Jajangmyeon, jjamppong, bulgogi, bibimbab... gyeolguk, da sikigo maratguna!
 "Black bean noodles, spicy seafood noodles, bulgogi, bibimbab... You ended up ordering everything!"
4. 그렇게 열심히 공부하더니, 결국 의사가 되고 말았구나! (**되 + 고 말다 => 되고 말다**)
Geureoke yeolsimhi gongbuhadeoni, gyeolguk eusaga doego maratguna!
 "You studied so hard, so you ended up becoming a doctor!"

Examples from This Dialogue

1. 결국, 춘천까지 오고 말았구나~!
Gyeolguk, chuncheonkkaji ogo maratguna~!
 "We ended up coming to Chuncheon!"
2. 아! 깜빡 잊고 말았네!
A! kkamppak itko maratne!
 "Ah! I just forgot one more thing!"
3. 결국, 네가 십이 인분을 시키고 말았구나...
Gyeolguk, nega sibi inbuneul sikigo maratguna...
 "You ended up ordering twelve servings of food..."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

* 막국수 (*makguksu*) "Korean Buckwheat Noodles"

막국수 (*makguksu*) is known as **Korean buckwheat noodles** and is famous in the region of 춘천 (*chuncheon*) "Chuncheon."

Ingredients

막국수, meaning "Korean buckwheat noodles," is very similar to 냉면 (*naengmyeon*) "Korean cold noodles," which many Korean people often eat during the summer.

As the name "Korean buckwheat noodles" indicates, 막국수 noodles are made of "buckwheat flour."

You can add various types of kimchi and vegetables for more flavor.

*Note: Since the noodles are made of buckwheat, eating 막국수 can be a bit difficult.

Taste

막국수 generally tastes quite spicy since it is seasoned with 고추장 소스 (*gochujang sosu*) "hot pepper paste."

Popularity

막국수 has become very popular throughout the 춘천 "Chuncheon" and 강원 "Gangwon" provinces. In 춘천 "Chuncheon," there are a lot of well-known 막국수 restaurants. The dish has become such a staple that there is even a 막국수 "Korean Buckwheat Noodles" museum.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Intermediate S2 #16

You Will be Full After I Give You This Korean Meal

CONTENTS

- 2 Korean Hangul
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 7 Grammar
- 9 Cultural Insight

16

KOREAN HANGUL

1. 아주머니: 자. 여기 닭갈비랑 막국수 여기 있어요.
2. 고은: 와. 맛있겠다!
3. 아주머니: 볶음밥은 닭갈비 다 먹은 후에 해 줄게요.
4. 철수: 네! 잘 먹겠습니다!
5. 아주머니: 밥 나왔어요. 볶아 줄게요.
6. 팀: 아. 나 이제 배불러. 더 이상은 못 먹겠어.
7. 수진: 나도 배부르다.
8. 고은: 나도 이젠 그만 먹을래.
9. 철수: 걱정하지 마! 내가 다 먹을게.
10. 고은: 나 잠깐 화장실 좀 갔다 올게.
11. 철수: 아. 다 먹었다!
12. 팀: 와.너 정말 대단하다! 볶음밥 사 인분을 다 먹었어.
13. 고은: 오빠.. 오빠 배 좀 봐. 한라산이야, 한라산!!!

ROMANIZATION

1. AJUMEONI: ja. yeogi dakgalbirang makguksu yeogi isseoyo.

CONT'D OVER

2. GOEUN: wa. masitgetda!
3. AJUMEONI: bokkeumbabeun dakgalbi da meogeun hue hae julgeyo.
4. CHEOLSU: ne! jal meokgetseumnida!
5. AJUMEONI: bap nawasseoyo. bokka julgeyo.
6. TIM: a. na ije baebulleo. deo isangeun mot meokgeseo.
7. SUJIN: nado baebureuda.
8. GOEUN: nado ijen geuman meogeullae.
9. CHEOLSU: geokjeonghaji ma! naega da meogeulge.
10. GOEUN: na jamkkan hwajangsil jom gatda olge.
11. CHEOLSU: a. da meogeotda!
12. TIM: wa.neo jeongmal daedanhada! bokkeumbap sa inbuneul da meogeoseo.
13. GOEUN: oppa.. oppa bae jom bwa. hallasaniya, hallasan!!!

ENGLISH

1. OWNER: Here are your spicy, marinated chicken and buckwheat noodles.
2. GOEUN: Wow! It looks delicious!

CONT'D OVER

3. OWNER: Stir-fried rice will be served after you finish eating the spicy, marinated chicken.
4. CHEOLSU: Understood it! Thanks for the meal.
5. OWNER: Here is your rice. I'll stir fry it for you.
6. TIM: Ah. I'm so full now. I can't eat any more.
7. SUJIN: I'm full too.
8. GOEUN: I think I'm done as well.
9. CHEOLSU: Don't worry! I'll clear up the leftovers.
10. GOEUN: I'm going to go to the bathroom.
11. CHEOLSU: Ah! Finished!
12. TIM: Wow! You are really incredible! You ate four servings of stir-fried rice all by yourself.
13. GOEUN: Cheolsu...Cheolsu, look at your stomach. It looks like Mt. Halla!

VOCABULARY

Hangul	Romanization	English	Class
후	hu	after; subsequently	noun
화장실	hwajangsil	toilet, bathroom	noun
다 먹다	da meokda	to eat everything	phrase

음식점	eumsikjeom	restaurant	noun
잠깐	jamkkan	just a moment, wait	adverb
더 이상	deo isang	any longer	adverb
대단하다	daedanhada	to be great	adjective
그만	geuman	stop, no more	adverb
밥	bap	meal, rice	noun
배	bae	stomach, belly	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

퇴직 후에 뭐 하실 거예요? toejik hu-e mwo hasil geo-yeyo? "What are you going to do after you retire?"	여기 화장실 있어요? yeogi hwajangsil itsseoyo? "Is there a toilet here?"
음식 남기지 말고 다 먹어! eumsik namgiji malgo da meogeo! "Don't leave anything on the plate and eat everything!"	내가 가장 좋아하는 음식점은 서브웨이야. naega gajang joahaneun eumsikjeomeun seobeuweiya. "My favorite restaurant is Subway."
회사 직원들은 음식점에서 식사를 하고 있습니다. hoesa jigwondeureun eumsikjeom-eseo siksareul hago isseumnida. "The office employees are eating at a restaurant."	잠깐 도와 줘. jamkkan dowa jwo. "Help me out a bit." (intimate)
더 이상 할 말이 없어. Deo isang hal mari eopseo. "I have nothing more to say."	모두 와 주셔서 대단히 감사합니다. modu wa jusyeoseo daedanhi gamsahamnida. "Thank you very much everyone for coming."

그만 좀 놀리세요. geuman jom nolliseyo. "Please stop making fun of me."	밥이 없는 아침 식사는 아침 식사가 아닙니다. babi eomneun achim siksaneun achim siksaga animnida. "A breakfast without rice is not breakfast."
샤워하고 저녁 밥 먹어. shawoehago jeoneyok bap meogeo. "Take a shower and eat dinner."	밥 먹었어요? bab meogeosseoyo? "Did you eat?"
배가 아파요. baega apayo. "My stomach hurts."	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

1. Verb Stem + ㄴ/은 후에 (n/eun hue) "after + -ing"

후에 (hue) means "after." Let's take a look at the conjugation rules.

Verb Stem + ㄴ/은 후에 (n/eun hue) "after + -ing"

{Rule #1}: We attach ㄴ 후에 to verb stems ending in a **vowel** (without a 받침)

{Rule #2}: We attach 은 후에 to verb stems ending in a **consonant** (with a 받침)

For Example:

Verb	Verb Stem + ㄴ/은 후에	Becomes...	"English"
1. 보다 "to watch" {Rule #1}	보 + ㄴ 후에	본 후에	"after watching"
2. 먹다 "to eat" {Rule #2}	먹 + 은 후에	먹은 후에	"after eating"

For Example:

1. 이 영화를 본 후에 집으로 돌아가자.
I yeonghwareul bon hue jibeuro dolagaja.
"Let's go back home after watching this movie."
2. 이 약을 먹은 후에 몸을 따뜻하게 해...
I yageul meogeun hue momeul ddeu-ddeutage hae...
"Keep your body warm right after having this medicine..."

잘 먹겠습니다. (*jal meokkesseumnida*) "Thanks for the meal."

잘 먹겠습니다 (*jal meokkesseumnida*) is a traditional phrase to say before having a meal, which means "I am grateful for the meal."/"Thanks for the meal."

For Example:

1. 밥 잘 먹겠습니다.
Bab jal meogetseumnida.
Literal: "I'm going to (enjoy) eating the meal."
2. 맛있게 잘 먹겠습니다.
Masikke jal meogetseumnida.
Literal: "I'm going to (deliciously) eat the meal."

3. 배불러 (*baebul-leo*) "be stuffed"/"be full"

배불러 (*baebul-leo*) came from the verb 배부르다 (*baebureuda*) "to be full"/"to be stuffed."

배불러 (*baebul-leo*) is the informal expression meaning "I'm full."

배불러요 (*baebulleoyo*) is the formal expression.

For Example:

1. 배불러! 더는 못 먹겠어! (=배불러서 더는 못 먹겠어!)
Baebul-leo! Deoneun mot meokkesseo! (=Baebul-leoseo deoneun mot meokkesseo!
)
"I'm stuffed! I can't eat any more!"
2. 전 이제 그만 됐습니다, 배불러요...
Jeon inje geuman doesseumnida, baebul-leoyo...
"That's enough for me. I'm full..."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is about -ㄹ/을게(요), Meaning That [the Speaker] Will [Do Something] for [Someone Else]."

볶음밥은 닭갈비 다 먹은 후에 해 줄게요.

Bokkeumbabeun dakgalbi da meogeun hue hae julkkeyo.

"I will serve the rice after you finish eating the stir-fried chicken."

We use **VST + ㄹ/을게(요) (r/eulkke(yo))** to express **a will or an intention of the speaker = "will [VERB]."**

We often use VST + ㄹ/을게 (r/eulkke) between friends or when speaking to someone younger.

We often say **VST + ㄹ/을게요 (r/eulkkeyo)** to the elderly or to customers.

Conjugation Rule

Verb Stem + ㄹ/을게(요) (r/eulkke(yo)) "[the speaker] will [do something] for [somebody else]"

{Rule #1} - We attach ㄹ게(요) to verb stems ending in a **vowel (without a 받침)**

{Rule #2} - We attach 을게(요) to verb stems ending in a **consonant (with a 받침)**

Verb	Verb Stem + ㄹ/을게 (요)	Becomes...	"English"
1. 사다 {Rule #1} "to buy"	사 + ㄹ게(요)	살게(요)	"(I) will buy (you) (something)"
2. 먹다 {Rule #2} "to eat"	먹 + 을게(요)	먹을게(요)	"(I) will eat (it for you)"
3. 하다 {Rule #1} "to do"	하 + ㄹ게(요)	할게(요)	"(I) will do (it for you)"
4. 찾다 {Rule #2} "to find"/"to search for"	찾 + 을게(요)	찾을게(요)	"(I) will find (it for you)"

For Example:

1. 내가 오늘 저녁 살게! (사 + ㄹ게 => 살게)
Naega o-neul jeo-nyeok salkke! (salkkeyo)
"Dinner is on me tonight!" = "I will treat you to dinner tonight!"
2. 걱정 마세요, 제가 남은 음식(을) 다 먹을게요... (먹 + 을게요 => 먹을게요)
Geokjeong maseyo, jega nameun eumsik(eul) da meogeulkkeyo...
"Please do not worry. I will eat all of the leftovers..."
3. 내가 이것을 할게, 넌 저것을 해줘! (하 + ㄹ게 => 할게)
Naega igeoseul halkke, neon jeogeoseul haejwo!
"I will (work on) this. Can you (work on) that, please?"
4. 내가 여기를 찾을게, 넌 저기를 찾아줄래? (찾 + 을게 => 찾을게)
Naega yeogireul chajaulkke, neon jeogireul chajajul-lae?
"I will search here. Can you please search over there?"

Examples from This Dialogue

1. 볶음밥은 닭갈비 다 먹은 후에 해 줄게요.
Bokkeumbabeun dakgalbi da meogeun hue hae julgeyo.
"The rice will be served after you finish eating the stir-fried chicken."
2. 밥 나왔어요. 볶아 줄게요.
Bab nawasseoyo. Bokka julkkeyo.
"Here is your rice. I'll stir fry it for you."
3. 걱정하지 마! 내가 다 먹을게!
Geokjeonghaji ma! Naega da meogeulkke!
"Don't worry! I will finish the leftovers."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

* 한라산 (*hallasan*) "Halla Mountain" or "Mount Halla"

한라산, "Halla Mountain," is the highest mountain in South Korea. The peak reaches the height of 1,950 meters. 한라산, "Halla Mountain," is considered to be one of the three most well-known mountains in Korea, with **지리산 (jirisan) "Jiri Mountain"** and **설악산 (seolraksan) "Seolrak Mountain"** being the other two.

☞ **What Hallasan is famous for:**

한라산 is known for having outstanding and beautiful scenery during all four seasons. The area around Halla Mountain has a **national park**, and **백록담 (baengnokdam), meaning "a crater lake,"** was formed inside the crater at the peak. 백록담 literally translates to "white deer lake" and is a must-see if you visit **제주도, which is "Jeju Island."**

☞ **Five Famous Trails:**

There are five hiking trails:

1. **관음사 (Gwaneumsa) trail**
2. **어리목 (Eorimok) trail**
3. **성판악 (Seongpanak) trail**
4. **영실 (Yeongsil) trail**
5. **돈내코 (Donnaeko) trail**

☞ **Admission:**

Free

☞ **Directions:**

1. Go along the **살록(sal-lok) "road"** entrance near 5-16 Road
2. **산천단(Sancheondan) "checkpoint"**
3. **관음사(Gwaneumsa) "campground"**

LESSON NOTES

Lower Intermediate S2 #17

I Don't Know Whether I'm Coming or Going in Korea

CONTENTS

- 2 Korean Hangul
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 7 Grammar
- 11 Cultural Insight

17

KOREAN HANGUL

1. 수진: 벌써 밤 열두 시야! 시간이 너무 늦어 버렸네.
2. 팀: 벌써 그렇게 됐구나! 지금 올라가야 할지 내일 올라가야 할지 모르겠네. 어떻게 할까?
3. 고은: 너무 늦었으니까 묵고 가자. 물론 부모님께서 무슨 말을 하실지 모르겠지만.
4. 수진: 응, 나도, 아버지가 허락할지 모르겠네.
5. 철수: 나도! 엄마가 허락 안 할지도 몰라.
6. 팀: 애들아. 일단 우리 전화해 보자!
7. 철수: 엄마~나야. 여기 춘천인데 지금 가야 할지, 자고 내일 가야 할지 몰라서요. 예.예.자고 오래!
8. 고은: 이젠 내 차례네. 될지 모르겠지만. 아빠, 여기 지금 춘천인데요, 지금 차가 고장 나서 오늘은 여기서 자고 가야 할 거 같아요. 예.예! 자고 오래!
9. 수진: 그럼 내 차례! 아버지, 춘천에 왔는데 차에 기름이 없어서 차가 섰어요. 자고 가야 할지 어떻게 해야 할지 몰라서. 네.네! 그럼 내일 볼게요.
10. 팀: 자. 그럼 나가자!

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. SUJIN: beolsseo bam yeoldu siya! sigani neomu neujeo beoryeonne.
2. TIM: beolsseo geureoke dwaetguna! jigeum ollagaya halji naeil rollagaya halji moreugenne. eotteoke halkka?
3. GOEUN: neomu neujeoseunikka mukgo gaja. mullon bumonimkkeseo museun mareul hasilji moreugetjiman.
4. SUJIN: eung, nado, abeojiga heorakhalji moreugenne.
5. CHEOLSU: nado! eommaga heorak an haljido molla.
6. TIM: aedeura. ildan uri jeonhwahae boja!
7. CHEOLSU: eomma~naya. yeogi chuncheoninde jigeum gaya halji, jago naeil gaya halji mollaseoyo. ye.ye.jago orae!
8. GOEUN: ijen nae charyene. doelji moreugetjiman. appa, yeogi jigeum chuncheonindeyo,jigeum chaga gojang naseo oneureun nyeogiseo jago gaya hal geogataiyo. ye.ye! jago orae!
9. SUJIN: geureom nae charye! abeoji, chuncheone wanneunde chae gireumi eopseoseo chaga seosseoyo. jago gaya halji eotteoke haeya halji mollaseo. ne.ne!geureom naeil boelgeyo.
10. TIM: ja. geureom nagaja!

ENGLISH

1. SUJIN: It's already midnight! It's too late.

CONT'D OVER

2. **TIM:** It's already that late! I don't know whether or not we should drive back home right now or spend the night here and go back home tomorrow. What should we do?
3. **GOEUN:** Let's spend the night here since it's so late. Of course, I don't know what my parents would say to that.
4. **SUJIN:** Yes, me too. I don't know whether or not my dad will let me.
5. **CHEOLSU:** Me, too! My mom might not let me spend the night here.
6. **TIM:** You guys, let's call them first!
7. **CHEOLSU:** Mom, it's me. I'm at Chuncheon right now. I don't know whether or not to go back home right now or spend the night here and go back tomorrow. Okay. Okay. She said I could spend the night!
8. **GOEUN:** It's my turn. I'm not sure whether this will work, but... Dad, I'm at Chuncheon right now. Our car broke down, so we might have to spend the night here. Okay. Okay. He said I could spend the night here!
9. **SUJIN:** It's my turn! Dad, we came to Chuncheon, but our car stopped because we're out of gas. I don't know whether or not we should spend the night here. Okay. Okay. See you tomorrow.
10. **TIM:** Well then, let's go!

VOCABULARY

Hangul	Romanization	English	Class
운전	unjeon	driving	noun

위험하다	wiheomhada	to be dangerous	adjective
시간	sigan	time, hour	noun
너무	neomu	very, very much so	
묵다	muktta	to stay for a night	verb
늦다	neutta	to be late	verb
허락하다	heorakhada	to permit, to allow	verb
어떻게	eotteoke	how, in what way	interrogative, adverb
모르다	moreuda	to not know	verb
차례	charye	one's turn	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

운전 할 줄 아세요? unjeon hal jul aseyo? "Do you know how to drive?"	여기는 미끄러워서 위험해요. yeogi-neun mikkeureowoseo wiheomhaeyo. "This part is slippery, so it's dangerous here."
어젯밤에 10시간 잤어. eojetbame yeolsigan jaseo. "I slept for ten hours last night."	약 2시간 지나갔어. yak dusigan jinagasseo. "About two hours passed."
거실이 너무 좁아요. geosiri neomu jobayo. "The living room is too small."	가방이 너무 무거워요. gabangi neomu mugeowoyo. "The bag is too heavy."
여기서 하루 묵어도 되요? Yeogiseo haru mugeodo doeyo? "Can we stay here for a night?"	늦어서 미안해요! neujeoseo mianhaeyo! "Sorry for being late!"

다행히 안 늦었어요. dahaenghi an neujeosseoyo. "Luckily, I wasn't late."	회사는 어떤 예외도 허락하지 않는다. Hoesaneun eotteon ye-oedo heorakhaji anneunda. "The company does not allow any exceptions."
어떻게 지내세요? eotteoke jinaeseyo? "How is it going?"	주말은 주로 어떻게 보내세요? jumareun juro eotteoke bonaeseyo? "How do you usually spend your weekends?"
제가 모르는 사람입니다. jega moreuneun saramimnida. "It's somebody I don't know."	저도 잘 몰라요. jeodo jal mollayo. "I don't know much about it either."
니 차례야. ni charyeya. "It's your turn."	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

1. 묵다 (*mukda*) "to stay at a (place)"

The word 묵다 (*mukda*) is a verb that we often use to describe "to stay the night."

 **Formation:** (name of a place) + 에서 + (number of nights) + 묵다 "to stay the night"

For Example:

- 호텔에서 얼마나 묵을 생각입니까?
Hotereseo eolmana mugeul saeng-gagimnikka?
"How long are you going to stay at the hotel?"
- 저는 (호텔에서) 5박 6일(오박육일)을 묵을 생각입니다.
Jeoneun (hotereseo) obak yugileul mugeul saeng-gakimnida.
"I am going to stay for six days and five nights (at the hotel)."

3. (밤이) 너무 늦었으니까 너의 집에서 하룻밤 묵고 갈게.
(Bami) neomu neujeosseunikka neoui jibeseo harutbam mukko galkke.
"Since it's too late, I'll stay the night at your place."

2. 허락 (heorak) "permission or approval"

The word 허락 (heorak) is a noun that means "permission," "consent," or "approval."

In order to make it a verb that means "to give (somebody) permission," attach 하다 (hada) right after 허락 so it becomes 허락하다 (heorakhada).

In order to make it a verb that means "to ask for permission" or "to get permission," attach 받다 (batta) or 구하다 (guhada) right after 허락 so it becomes 허락을 받다 (heorageul batta) or 허락을 구하다 (heorageul guhada).

For Example:

- 우리가 여기서 묵기 위해서는 먼저 부모님께 허락을 구해야 해!
Uriga yeogiseo muki wihaeseoneun meonjeo bumonimkke heorageul guhaeya hae!
"We first have to ask for permission from our parents in order to stay the night here!"
- 철수야, 어머니가 허락하셨어!
Cheolsuya, eomeoniga heorakhasyeosseo!
"Hey Cheolsu, (my) mom gave me permission (to stay the night)!"

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is about Noun(을/를) + 할지 모르다 and Verb Stem + 어야/어야/여야 할지 모르다.

여기 춘천인데 지금 가야 할지, 자고 내일 가야 할지 몰라서요...

Yeogi chuncheon-inde jigeum gaya halji, jago nae-il gaya halji molraseoyo...

"I'm at Chuncheon right now. I don't know whether or not I should go back home or spend the night here and return home tomorrow..."

We often use the expression **noun + 할지 모르다 and verb stem + (어/아/여)야 할지 모르다** in order to indicate **doubt** about a future prediction the speaker(s) assumes.

Therefore, this expression often shows some degree of **worry, doubt, fear, or hesitation**.

Throughout this lesson, we'll learn about the **two usages of -할지 모르다** (*halji moreuda*). They are:

1. **Noun (을/를) + 할지 모르다**, meaning "not know whether or not [subject] would do [noun]"
2. **Verb Stem + (어/아/여)야 할지 모르다**, meaning "not know whether or not to [verb]"

Let's have a look at its first usage.

📖 **Noun (을/를) + 할지 모르다** (*halji moreuda*) "not know whether (subject) would do (noun)"

This expression shows doubt about the [noun] the subject predicts.

For Example:

1. 아빠가 **허락(을)할지** 모르다
appaga heorak(eul) halji moreuda
"Not sure whether or not my dad will give me **permission**."

Noun	Noun (을/를) + 할지 모르다	Becomes...	"English"
1. 허락 (<i>heorak</i>) "permission"	허락(을) + 할지 모르다	허락을할지 모르다	"not know whether or not (subject) will give me permission"
2. 수업 (<i>su-eop</i>) "a lesson"/"class"	수업(을) + 할지 모르다	수업을 할지 모르다	"not sure whether or not (subject) will start a lesson"
3. 판매 (<i>panmae</i>) "sales"	판매(를) + 할지 모르다	판매를할지 모르다	"not know whether or not (subject) will go on sale"

For Example:

1. 아버지가 허락(을)할지 모르겠네...
Abeojiga heorak(eul)halji moreugetne...
 "I don't know whether or not my father will give me permission..."
2. 지금 선생님께서 수업(을)할지 몰라...
Jigeum seonsaengnimkkeseo su-eop(eul) halji mol-la...
 "I am not sure whether or not a teacher will start a lesson now..."
3. 그 잡지를 판매할지 안 할지 모르겠네...
Geu japjireul panmaehalji an halji moreugetne...
 "I do not know whether or not the magazine will go on sale..."

 Verb Stem + 어야/아야/여야 할지 모르다 "not know whether or not to VERB"

This expression shows doubt about the action (=verb) the subject will/would do.

For Example:

1. 가야 할지 모르다
gaya halji moreuda
 "not sure whether or not I should go"

Verb	Verb + (어/아/여)야 할지 모르다	Becomes...	"English"
1. 돌아가다 (<i>dolagada</i>) "to return"/"to go back"	돌아가 + 야 할지 모르다	돌아가야 할지 모르다	"do not know whether or not I should return (go back)"
2. 보다 (<i>meokda</i>) "to see"/"to watch"	보+ 어야 할지 모르다	봐야(보아야) 할지 모르다	"do not know whether or not I should watch it"

3. 하다 (<i>hada</i>) "to do"	하 + 어야 할지 모르다	해야(하어야) 할지 모르다	"do not know whether or not I should do it"
---	---------------	----------------	---

* Notes: Here are some related grammar points for reference:

<http://www.koreanclass101.com/learningcenter/reference/grammar/416>

<http://www.koreanclass101.com/learningcenter/reference/grammar/509>

For Example:

- 차가 막혀서 다시 **돌아가야** 할지 모르겠네...
Chaga makhyeoseo dasi dolagaya halji moreugetne...
"Because of heavy traffic, I do not know whether or not (we should) go back the way we came..."
- 이 드라마를 **봐야** 할지 안 봐야 할지 모르겠네...
I deuramareul bwaya halji an bwaya halji moreugetne...
"I am not sure whether or not I should watch this T.V. show..."
- 이것을 **해야** 할지 안 해야 할지 모르겠네... 아버지께 물어볼까?
Igeoseul haeya halji an haeya halji moreugetne... abeojikke muleobolkka?
"I do not know whether or not I should do this... Should I ask my dad about this?"

Examples from This Dialogue

- 지금 올라가야 할지 내일 올라가야 할지 모르겠네...
Jigeum olragaya halji nae-il olragaya halji moreugetne...
"I don't know whether or not we should drive back home right now or stay the night and go back home tomorrow..."
- 엄마가 허락 안 할지도 몰라.
Eom-maga heorak an haljido molra.
"My mom might not let me spend the night here."

3. 여기 춘천인데 지금 가야 할지, 자고 내일 가야 할지 몰라서요...
Yeogi chuncheon-inde jigeum gaya halji, jago nae-il gaya halji molraseoyo...
 "I'm at Chuncheon right now. I don't know whether or not to go back home right now or spend the night here and go back home tomorrow..."
4. 자고 가야 할지 어떻게 해야 할지 몰라서...
Jago gaya halji eoddeokke haeya halji mol-laseo...
 "I don't know whether or not we should spend the night here..."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

The Korean Family

In Korea, it's very common for teenagers or even for young adults to seek permission from their parents before spending the night somewhere else other than their homes.

Let's learn some vocabulary related to 가족 (*gajok*), which means "a family."

<i>Korean</i>	<i>"English"</i>
부모/부모님	"parents"
아빠/아버지	"dad"/"father"
엄마/어머니	"mom"/"mother"
형	"older brother" (used by males)
오빠	"older brother" (used by females)
누나	"older sister" (used by males)
언니	"older sister" (used by females)
남동생	"younger brother"
여동생	"younger sister"

LESSON NOTES

Lower Intermediate S2 #18 Don't Stop Learning Korean

CONTENTS

- 2 Korean Hangul
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 8 Grammar
- 10 Cultural Insight

18

KOREAN HANGUL

1. 수진: 여보세요? 아. 아빠! 무슨 일이에요? 예, 예, 예, 알았어요! 걱정 마세요!
2. 팀: 아버지께서 뭐라고 하시는데..?
3. 수진: 아버지가 아버지를 제외한 모든 남자는 다 늑대라고 절대 믿지 말라고 하시네.
4. 팀: 하하. 역시 한국 아버님들은..
5. 고은: 여보세요? 아, 아빠! 무슨 일이에요? 예, 예, 예, 알았어요! 걱정하지 마세요!
6. 철수: 아버지가 뭐라고 하셔?
7. 고은: 남자들하고 같이 술 마시지 말라고 하시는데..
8. 철수: 하하. 뭐라고 더 말씀하신 것 같으신데..
9. 고은: 응. 철수 너하고 말도 하지 말라고 하셨어!
10. 철수: 뭐!? 여보세요? 네. 엄마, 무슨 일이에요? 네, 네, 네, 알았어요. 걱정 마세요. 엄마!
11. 고은: 엄마가 뭐라고 하셔?
12. 철수: 엄마가 엄마를 제외한 모든 여자는 다 여우라고 조심하래! 특히 고은이 너!

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. SUJIN: yeoboseyo? a. appa! museun irieyo? ye, ye, ye, arasseoyo!
geokjeong maseyo!
2. TIM: abeojikkeseo mworago hasineunde..?
3. SUJIN: abeojiga abeojireul jeoehan modeun namjaneun da neukdaerago
jeoldae mitji mallago hasine.
4. TIM: haha. yeoksi hanguk abeonimdeureun..
5. GOEUN: yeoboseyo? a, appa! museun irieyo? ye, ye, ye, arasseoyo!
geokjeonghaji maseyo!
6. CHEOLSU: abeojiga mworago hasyeo?
7. GOEUN: namjadeulhago gachi sul masiji mallago hasineunde..
8. CHEOLSU: haha. mworago deo malsseumhasin geot gachisinde..
9. GOEUN: eung. cheolsu neohago maldo haji mallago hasyeosseo!
10. CHEOLSU: mwo!? yeoboseyo? ne. eomma, museun irieyo? ne, ne, ne,
arasseoyo. geokjeong maseyo. eomma!
11. GOEUN: eommaga mworago hasyeo?
12. CHEOLSU: eommaga eommareul jeoehan modeun nyeojaneun da yeourago
josimharae! teukhi goeuni neo!

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. SUJIN: Hello? Ah, Dad! What's the matter? Yes, yes, yes, I will keep that in mind! Don't worry!
2. TIM: What did your dad say?
3. SUJIN: He said that men, except him, are all wolves, so I should never believe what they say.
4. TIM: Ha ha! That's what I would expect to hear from Korean fathers.
5. GOEUN: Hello? Ah, Dad! What's the matter? Yes, yes, yes, I will keep that in mind! Don't worry!
6. CHEOLSU: What did your dad say?
7. GOEUN: He said that I shouldn't drink with men.
8. CHEOLSU: Ha ha! Did he say anything else? I heard him saying more.
9. GOEUN: Yes. He said that I shouldn't say a word to you, Cheolsu. Not a single word!
10. CHEOLSU: What? Hello? Yes. Mom, what's the matter? Yes, yes, yes, I will keep that in mind! Don't worry!
11. GOEUN: What did your mom say?
12. CHEOLSU: My Mom said that women, except her, are all foxes, so I should be careful of them. Especially you, Goeun!

VOCABULARY

Hangul	Romanization	English	Class
모든	modeun	all, whole, every	adjective
응	eung	okay, all right, yeah (informal)	expression
말씀하시다	malsseumhasida	to talk, to say, to speak (honorific)	verb
마시다	masida	to drink	verb
술	sul	alcohol	noun
역시	yeoksi	just as expected, just as I thought	adverb
절대	jeoldae	never	adverb
늑대	neukdae	wolf	noun
제외한	je-oehan	except	adjective
특히	teukhi	especially, particularly	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

당신이 접하는 모든 새로운 단어를 외워야 합니다. dangsini jeopaneun modeun saeroun daneoreul oewoya hamnida. "You should memorize every new word you encounter."	응, 비가 좀 왔어. eung, biga jom wasseo. "Yes. It did rain a bit."
선생님이 그렇게 말씀하셨습니다. seonsaengnim-i geureotke malsseumhasyeosseoyo. "My teacher said so."	나는 추운 날 뜨거운 차를 마시는 것을 좋아한다. naneun chuun nal tteugeoun chareul masineun geoseul joahanda. "I love to drink hot tea on a cold day."

갈비를 먹으면서 소주 마시는 것을 좋아해요. galbireul meoggeumyonseo soju masineun geoseul joahaeyo. "I like eating galbi and drinking soju."	시원한 맥주가 마시고 싶어. siwonhan maekjuga masigo sipeo. "I want to drink some cold beer."
저는 술 못 마셔요. jeo-neun sul mot masyeoyo. "I can't drink alcohol."	역시, 잘 해냈구나. yeoksi jal haenaetguna. "Just as I thought, you did it!"
절대 늦지 마세요. jeoldae neutji maseyo. "You should never be late."	회색 늑대가 목초지에서 먹이를 찾고 있다. hoesaek neukdaega mokchojieseo meogireul chakko itda. "The gray wolf is foraging for food in the meadow."
그녀는 월요일을 제외한 모든 날에 일한다. Geunyeoneun worryo-ireul je-oehan modeun nare ilhanda. "She works every day except Monday."	그것은 특히 아름다웠어요. geugeoseun teukhi areumdawoesseoyo. "That was particularly beautiful."

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

1. 걱정 마세요 (*Geokjeong maseyo*)/걱정하지 마세요 (*Geokjeonghaji maseyo*) "Don't worry."

We often use the phrase 걱정 마세요 (*Geokjeong maseyo*) when trying to "free someone from fear or worry."

Let's break down the phrase:

걱정 (*geokjeong*) is a noun that means "worry," "concern," or "anxiety."

말다 (*malda*) / 마세요 (*maseyo*) is a verb that means "please don't."

Therefore, all together 걱정 말다 (*geokjeong malda*)/걱정 마세요 (*geokjeong maseyo*) means "(Please) don't worry."

For Example:

1. 걱정하지 마세요. 아이들은 제가 돌볼게요!
Geokjeonghaji maseyo. Aideureun jega dolbolkkeyo!
 "Don't worry. I will look after (your) kids!"
2. 이건 아무 일도 아니야. 그렇게까지 걱정할 일이 아니야!
Igeon amu ildo aniya. Geureokekkaji geokjeonghal iri aniya!
 "This is nothing. This isn't anything to get worried about!"

2. 늑대 (*neukdae*) "a wolf" (literal) or "a cunning man who takes advantage of women" (contextual)

The word 늑대 (*neukdae*) has two meanings in Korean:

#1 (literal meaning): "a wolf" (the animal)

#2 (contextual meaning): "a cunning man who takes advantage of women" (the idiom)

For Example:

1. '늑대와 춤을'이란 영화 봤어?
'Neukdaewa chumeul'iran yeonghwa bwasseo?
 "Have you seen the movie 'Dances with Wolves?'"
2. 남자는 다 늑대야. 절대 남자 믿지 마!
Namjaneun da neukdaeya. Jeoldae namja mitji ma!
 "Men are all wolves. Don't ever believe what they say!"

3. 여우 (*yeo-u*) "a fox" (literal) or "a cunning woman who takes advantage of men" (contextual)

The word 여우 (*yeo-u*) has two meanings in Korean:

#1 (literal meaning): "a fox" (the animal)

#2 (contextual meaning): "a cunning woman who takes advantage of men" (the idiom)

For Example:

1. 우리는 다리가 덩에 걸린 여우를 발견했습니다.
Urineun dariga deoche geolrin yeo-ureul balgyeonhaesseumnida.
 "We found a fox with its leg caught in a trap."

2. 여자는 다 여우야. 절대 여자 믿지 마!
Yeojaneun da yeo-uya. Jeoldae yeoja mitji ma!
 "Women are all foxes. Never trust them!"

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is About 지 말라고 하다, Meaning "To Tell Someone NOT to Do Something."

남자들하고 같이 술 마시지 말라고 하시는데...
Namjadeulhago gachi sul masiji malrago hasineunde...
 "He said that I shouldn't drink with men..."

We use Verb Stem + 지 말라고 하다 (*ji malrago hada*) when "someone tells the subject NOT to (VERB)."

Therefore, we often use the expression 지 말라고 하다 when somebody "warns the subject."

First, let's take a look at the phrase.

지 말라고 하다 (*ji malrago hada*) "(somebody) tells the subject NOT to [verb]"
 말라 (*mal-la*) is an imperative ending that means "do not," "should not," or "never."
 고 하다 (*go hada*) is a phrase meaning "tells that..." or "says that..."

Therefore, **Verb Stem + 지 말라고 하다 (*ji malrago hada*)** literally means "said (subject) should NOT [verb]," which contextually means **"somebody tells (subject) NOT to do something."**

Conjugation Rule

Verb Stem + - 지 말라고 하다 (*ji malrago hada*) "somebody tells [subject] NOT to [verb]"

VERB	Verb Stem + 지 말라 고 하다	Becomes...	"English"
1. 믿다 (<i>mittda</i>) "to believe or to trust"	믿 + 지 말라고 하다	믿지 말라고 하다	"(He) says (I) <u>should</u> <u>NOT</u> <u>trust</u> ..."

2. 마시다 (<i>maisda</i>) "to drink"	마시 + 지 말라고 하다	마시지 말라고 하다	"(She) says (I) should <u>NOT</u> <u>drink</u> ..."
3. 말하다 (<i>malhada</i>) "to talk"/"to tell"	말하 + 지 말라고 하다	말하지 말라고 하다	"(He) says (I) should <u>NOT</u> <u>tell</u> ..."
4. 운전하다 (<i>unjeonhada</i>) "to drive"	운전하 + 지 말라고 하 다	운전하지 말라고 하다	"(She) says (I) should <u>NOT</u> <u>drive</u> ..."

For Example:

- 그는 아무도 믿지 말라고 하였습니다. (믿 + 지 말라고 하였습니다 => 믿지 말라고 하였습니다)
Geuneun a-mudo mitji malrago hayeosseumnida.
"He told (me) not to trust anyone."
- 아버지는 (저에게) 술을 마시지 말라고 하셨습니다. (마시 + 지 말라고 하셨습니다 => 마시지 말
라고 하셨습니다)
Abeojineun (jeo-ege) sureul masiji malrago hasyeosseumnida.
"My father told (me) that I should not drink (alcohol)."
- 친구가 아무한테도 비밀을 말하지 말라고 하었습니다. (말하 + 지 말라고 하었습니다 => 말하지 말라
고 하었습니다)
Chinguga amuhantedo bimireul malhaji malrago haesseumnida.
"My friend told (me) not to tell his secret to anyone."
- 어머니는 절대 술을 마시고 운전하지 말라고 하셨습니다. (운전하 + 지 말라고 하셨습니다 => 운
전하지 말라고 하셨습니다)
Eomeonineun jeoldae sureul masigo unjeonhaji malrago hasyeosseumnida.
"My mother told (me) I should never drink and drive."

Examples from This Dialogue

1. 아버지가 아버지를 제외한 모든 남자는 다 늑대라고 절대 믿지 말라고 하시네.
Abeojiga abeoji-reul je-oehan modeun namjaneun da neukdaerago jeoldae mitji malrago hasine.
"He said that men, except him, are all wolves, so I should never believe what they say."
2. 남자들하고 같이 술 마시지 말라고 하시는데...
Namjadeulhago gachi sul masiji malrago hasineunde...
"He said that I shouldn't drink with men..."
3. 철수 너하고 말도 하지 말라고 하셨어!
Cheolsu neohago maldo haji malrago hasyeosseo!
"He said that I shouldn't say a word to you, Cheolsu. Not a single word!"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Changes in the Korean Parental Roles

In the era when Korea was developing economically, fathers had to make all decisions for their family. It gave them a lot of responsibilities and also earned their family's respect. For this reason, Korean family members followed what their father decided to do. As you can see in the conversation between four friends, you had to ask your father whether or not you can go out to drink.

These days, mothers have much more power. Although fathers still have a lot of responsibilities for their family, all decisions are usually made by mothers. They gather information from their friends and trusted sources and make decisions. They do not follow their instinct. They decide something based on facts and reality. Then, they ask their family to follow their decision, which is not easy to say no to since mothers have a lot of resources supporting their decision. That's how mothers get their power among family members.

If you are Korean, your mother will be the first person to ask if you want to get married. She will research everything for you and your marriage, then make the decision about whether or not you can get married. If she says no, it will be not easy to get married. This is true of not only the big issues: young Koreans also ask their mothers about many personal things to get

their permission. That's why Cheolsu asked his mother for permission to stay outside.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Intermediate S2 #19

Can you Take the Heat in Korea?

CONTENTS

- 2 Korean Hangul
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 7 Grammar
- 9 Cultural Insight

19

KOREAN HANGUL

1. 수진: 우와. 여기 찜질방 정말 크다..
2. 고은: 그러게. 거기다가 방이 3종류나 있어 - "얼음의 방", "소금의 방", "불의 방".
3. 철수: "불의 방!?" 거기 재밌겠다! 우리 저기 불의 방에 들어가자!
4. 팀: 들어가서?
5. 철수: 끝까지 견뎌내는 게임을 하는 거지.
6. 팀: 흠... 그거 재밌겠다. 그럼, 우리 커플 게임으로 할까?
7. 수진: 좋았어! 그럼 커플 중의 한 명만 남아도 이기는 걸로 하자.
8. 고은: 헉헉.더 이상은 못 견디겠다! 수진아, 우리 먼저 나가자..
9. 수진: 그래, 팀, 화이팅! 참아내. 자기야!
10. 고은: 견뎌내. 철수야.! 사랑해. 자기!
11. 팀: 내 사랑, 수진이를 위해서 끝까지 견뎌내겠어!
12. 철수: 내 사랑, 고은이를 위해 열을 이겨내겠어!
13. 수진: 고은아, 재네 좀 이상해!
14. 고은: 철수야! 눈 떠! 일어나!

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. SUJIN: uwa. yeogi jjimjilbang jeongmal keuda..
2. GOEUN: geureoge. geogidaga bangi se jongnyuna isseo - "eoreumui bang", "sogeumui bang", "burui bang".
3. CHEOLSU: "burui bang!?" geogi jaemitgetda! uri jeogi burui bange deureogaja!
4. TIM: deureogaseo?
5. CHEOLSU: kkeutkkaji gyeondyeonaeneun geimeul haneun geoji.
6. TIM: heumtt geugeo jaemitgetda. geureom, uri keopeul geimeuro halkka?
7. SUJIN: joaseo! geureom keopeul jungui han myeongman namado igineun geollo haja.
8. GOEUN: heokheok.deo isangeun mot gyeondigetda! sujina, urin meonjeo nagaja..
9. SUJIN: geurae, tim, hwaiting! chamanae. jagiya.!
10. GOEUN: gyeondyeonae. cheolsuya.! saranghae. jagi!
11. TIM: nae sarang, sujinireul wihaeseo kkeutkkaji gyeondyeonaegeseo!
12. CHEOLSU: nae sarang, goeunireul wihae yeoreul rigyeonaegeseo!
13. SUJIN: goeuna, jyaene jom isanghae!
14. GOEUN: cheolsuya! nun tteo! ireona!

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. SUJIN: Wow. This steam room is really big!
2. GOEUN: Isn't it? There are even three types of rooms...an "ice room," a "salt room," and a "fire room."
3. CHEOLSU: "A fire room?" That sounds interesting! Let's go into the "fire room" over there!
4. TIM: And after that?
5. CHEOLSU: Let's play a game and see who can last the longest in the room.
6. TIM: Hmm. That sounds interesting! Should we play in teams?
7. SUJIN: Okay! Let's make it a rule that if one person from either team remains, they win.
8. GOEUN: I can't take it anymore! Sujin, let's get out of here.
9. SUJIN: Okay. You can do it, Tim! Bear the heat!
10. GOEUN: Stick it out, Cheolsu! I love you!
11. TIM: My love, Sujin, I'll stick it out until the end for you!
12. CHEOLSU: My love, Goeun, I'll bear up against the heat for you!
13. SUJIN: Goeun, look at them. Something's wrong!
14. GOEUN: Cheolsu! Open your eyes! Wake up!

VOCABULARY

Hangul	Romanization	English	Class
불	bul	fire, light	
남다	namda	to stay	verb
눈을 뜨다	nuneul tteuda	to open one's eyes	phrase
얼음	eoreum	ice	noun
커플	keopeul	couple	noun
들어가다	deureogada	to enter, to go into	verb
열	yeol	heat	noun
끝까지	kkeutkkaji	to the end, until the end	adverb
이상하다	isanghada	to be strange	
이겨내다	igyeonaeda	to overcome	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

가스렌지 불이 너무 세요. gaseurenji buri neomu sseyo. "The fire on the stove is too strong."	방과 후에 남아서 공부해. banggwa hu-e namaseo gongbuhae. "Stay after school and study."
눈 뜨지 마세요. Nun tteuji maseyo. "Please don't open your eyes."	혹시 얼음 있어요? hokssi eoreum isseoyo? "Do you have ice by any chance?"
해변에 행복한 커플이 꼭 껴안고 있다. haebyeone haengbokan keopeuri kkok kkyeoankko itda. "The happy couple is hugging each other on the beach."	먼저 들어가세요. meonjeo deureogaseyo. "I'll go in after you."

먼저 들어가세요. meonjeo deureogaseyo. "I'll go in after you."	들어가도 괜찮아요? deureogado gwaenchanayo? "Can I go in?"
이 기계는 열을 발생시킬 것이다. I gigyeneun yeoreul balsaeng-sikil geosida. "This machine will generate heat."	책을 끝까지 읽었다. Chaegeul kkeutkkaji ilgeotda. "I read the book until the end."
이상한 날씨가 계속되고 있어요. isanghan nalssiga gyesokttoego isseoyo. "The strange weather is continuing."	요즘에 날씨가 이상해요. yojeume nalssiga isanghaeyo. "The weather is strange these days."
제 남동생은 군대의 힘든 훈련을 이겨내었습니다. je nam-dong-saeng-eun gun-dae-ui him-deun hul-ryeon-eul i-gyeo-nae-eot-sseumnida. "My brother overcame the hard training of his military service."	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

1. 견디다 (*gyeondida*) "to endure"/"to bear"

This word, 견디다 (*gyeondida*), means "to endure" or "to bear."

Let's take a look at some examples and see how we use this word in a sentence.

For Example:

- 이젠 더 이상은 견딜 수가 없어...

I-jen deo i-sangeun gyeondil suga eopseo...

"I cannot endure it any longer..."
- 힘든 시간을 참고 견디면 좋은 시간이 올거야...

Himdeun siganeul chamgo gyeondimyeon joeun sigani olgeoya...

"If you can endure the difficult times, the good times will come to you..."

2. 이기다 (*igida*) "to overcome"/"to win"/"to beat"

This word, 이기다 (*igida*), means "to overcome," "to win," or "to beat."

Let's take a look at some example sentences.

For Example:

1. 이 시합에서 이기면 결승전이야!
I sihabeseo igimyeon gyeolseungjeoniya!
"If we win this competition, we can go to the finals!"
2. 힘든 시간을 참고 이기면 행운은 올 거야!
Himdeun siganeul chamgo igimyeon haeng-uneun ol geoya!
"If you can overcome the difficult times, good fortune will come to you!"

3. 참다 (*chamda*) "to suppress"/"to control"/"to refrain"

This word, 참다 (*chamda*), means "to suppress," "to control," or "to be patient."

Let's take a look at some example sentences...

For Example:

1. 숨을 오랫동안 참으면 몸에 나빠!
Sumeul oraetdong-an chameumyeon mome nappa!
"If you hold your breath for too long, it's not good for your health!"
2. 힘들고 아프겠지만 조금만 더 참아봐...
Himdeulgo apeugetjiman jogeum-man deo chamabwa...
"It must be painful, but please hang on just a little longer..."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is About -아(어/여) 내다 "proceeding VERB was finished with difficulties"

내 사랑, 수진이를 위해서 끝까지 견뎌내겠어!

Nae sarang, sujinireul wihaeseo kkeukkaji gyeondyeonaegesseo!

"My love, Sujin, I'll stick it out until end for you!"

Verb Stem + 아(어/여) 내다 [*a(eo/yeo) naeda*] is used when expressing that "something was / is finished with difficulties".

First, let's take a look at the phrase.

VERB STEM + -아(어/여) 내다 [*a(eo/yeo) naeda*] "proceeding VERB was finished with difficulties"

- 아(어/여/야) [*a(eo/yeo/ya)*] is a connective ending used to express "a prerequisite" for objectives. It implies a sense of obligation and persistence.

- 내다 [*naeda*] is 'an auxiliary verb' that means "do all the way" to the very end.

Therefore, '**VERB STEM**' + 아(어/여) 내다 [*a(eo/yeo) naeda*] means "**the preceding VERB was / is finished with difficulties**".

Conjugation Rule

Verb Stem + 아(어/여) 내다 [*a(eo/yeo) naeda*] - "the preceding VERB was / is finished with difficulties"

VERB	Verb Stem + 아(어/여) 내다	Becomes...	Translation
1. 견디다 [<i>gyeondida</i>] to endure / to bear / to stand up	견디 + *어 내다	견뎌내다 = 견디어내다	"to endure (something)"
2. 이기다 [<i>igida</i>] to overcome / to win / to beat	이기 + *어 내다	이겨내다 = 이기어내다	"to overcome (something)"
3. 참다 [<i>chamda</i>] to suppress / to control / to refrain	참 + *아 내다	참아내다	"to suppress (something)"

* Notes: here are some related grammar points that could be helpful for you to understand this grammar point better -

For Example:

1. 이 고난을 잘 이겨낸다면 어떠한 고난도 견뎌낼 수 있을 겁니다! (**견디 + 어내다 => 견뎌내다**)
I gonaneul jal igyeo-naendamyeon eotteohan gonando gyeondyeonael su issel geomnida!
"If you can overcome this hardship, you can stand up to any kind of difficulty!"
2. 힘내세요. 당신은 이 힘든 훈련을 이겨낼 수 있어요! (**이기 + 어내다 = 이겨내다**)
Himnaeseyo. Dangsineun i himdeun hunryeoneul igyeonael su isseoyo!
"Keep your chin up. You can get through this hard training!"
3. 모든 과정을 곳곳하게 참아낸 당신은 진정한 승리자입니다. (**참 + 어내다 = 참아내다**)
Modeun gwajeong-eul kkut-kkut-hage chamanaen dangsineun jinjeong-han seung-rija-imnida.
"You are the true winner because you were able to endure everything."

Examples From This Dialogue

1. 끝까지 견뎌내는 게임을 하는 거지.
Kkeut-kkaji gyeondyeo-naeneun ge-imeul haneun geoji.
"Let's play a game and see who can last the longest in the room."
2. 내 사랑, 수진이를 위해서 끝까지 견뎌내겠어!
Nae sarang, sujini-reul wihaeseo kkeut-kkaji gyeon-dyeo-naegesseo!
"My love, Sujin, I'll stick it out until the end for you!"
3. 내 사랑, 고은이를 위해 열을 이겨내겠어!
Nae sarang, goeunireul wihae yeoreul igyeonaegesseo!
"My love, Goeun, I will bear up against the heat for you!"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

*** 찜질방 (jjimjilbang) "a dry sauna" or "a steam room"**

찜질방 (*jjimjilbang*) is the ubiquitous and famous spa furnished with hot tubs, showers, saunas, massage tables, and other amenities...

Let's break the word down:

찜질 (*jjimjil*) is a noun that means "heated bath" or "hot sauna." 방 (*bang*) is a noun that means "a room." Therefore, all together, 찜질방 means "a heated room" or "a hot sauna room," which equals "a steam room."

About 찜질방

Korean steam rooms are open twenty-four hours. They have become a popular place for Korean families to relax and socialize. Most steam rooms are equipped with snack bars and wide-screen TVs. Visitors can opt to stay and sleep overnight. On average, the entrance fee usually costs around 10,000 won (\$9.00 USD).

For Example:

1. 여기 찜질방 크고 좋다!
Yeogi jjimjilbang keugo jota!
"This steam room is big and nice!"
2. 한국에는 "찜질방"이라고 알려진 사우나가 있습니다.
Hangugaeneun "jjimjilbang"irago alryeojin saunaga isseumnida.
"There is a sauna in Korea that is known as 'jjimjilbang.'"

LESSON NOTES

Lower Intermediate S2 #20

Braving the Korean Doctor

CONTENTS

- 2 Korean Hangul
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 5 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 7 Grammar
- 9 Cultural Insight

20

KOREAN HANGUL

1. 철수: 아이고~ 아이고~ 죽겠다.
2. 의사: 두 분 다 탈진하셨습니다. 일단, 주사 맞아야 합니다.
3. 고은: 탈진이요!? 주사 맞으면 괜찮아지나요?
4. 팀: 주사?! 의사 선생님! 저희 하나도 안 아파요...
5. 의사: 팀 씨, 주사실로 가세요.
6. 팀: 주사 정말 싫은데...
7. 철수: 의사 선생님! 저도 맞아야 하나요? 저는 안 맞아도 되죠?
8. 의사: 철수 씨는 탈진 증상이 더 심해서 두 대 맞아야 합니다.
9. 철수: 뭐요!? 두 대나 맞아야 하나요?
10. 의사: 박 간호사~ 준비해 주세요.
11. 박 간호사: 팀씨, 엉덩이에 힘 빼세요.
12. 팀: 악~! 수진아~ 살려줘~

ROMANIZATION

1. CHEOLSU: aigo~ aigo~ jukgetda.
2. UISA: du bun da taljinhasyeotseumnida. ildan, jusa majaya hamnida.

CONT'D OVER

3. GOEUN: taljiniyo!? jusa majeumyeon gwaenchanajinayo?
4. TIM: jusa?! uisa seonsaengnim! jeohui hanado an apayo...
5. UISA: tim ssi, jusasillo gaseyo.
6. TIM: jusa jeongmal sireunde...
7. CHEOLSU: uisa seonsaengnim! jeodo majaya hanayo? jeoneun an majado doejyo?
8. UISA: cheolsu ssineun taljin jeungsangi deo simhaeseo du dae majaya hamnida.
9. CHEOLSU: mwoyo!? du daena majaya hanayo?
10. UISA: bak ganhosa~ junbihae juseyo.
11. BAK GANHOSA : timssi, eongdeongie him ppaeseyo.
12. TIM: ak~! sujina~ sallyeojwo~

ENGLISH

1. CHEOLSU: Oh, I'm dying.
2. DOCTOR: Both of you fainted from exhaustion. First, you need to get an injection.
3. GOEUN: Exhaustion? Will they be all right if they get a shot?

CONT'D OVER

4. TIM: A shot? Doctor, we're totally fine.
5. DOCTOR: Please go to the injection room.
6. TIM: I really hate shots.
7. CHEOLSU: Doctor! Do I also need to get a shot? I don't need to, right?
8. DOCTOR: Your symptoms are much worse, so you will need to get two shots.
9. CHEOLSU: What? I need to get two shots?
10. DOCTOR: Nurse. Please prepare the shots.
11. NURSE PARK: Tim, please relax your buttocks.
12. TIM: Ow! Sujin, Save me.

VOCABULARY

Hangul	Romanization	English	Class
탈진	taljin	exhaustion	noun
살려주다	salryeojuda	to save, to rescue, to spare	verb
엉덩이	eong-deong-i	butt, buttocks	noun
준비하다	junbihada	to prepare	verb
심하다	simhada	to be harsh, to be tough, to be too much	verb
증상	jeungsang	symptom	noun

하나도	hanado	(not) at all	adverb
주사를 맞다	jusareul matda	to get an injection or a shot	phrase
일단	ildan	first, anyway	adverb
힘 빼세요.	him ppaeseyo.	Relax or loosen up (oneself).	expression

SAMPLE SENTENCES

그는 완전히 탈진해서 바닥에 쓰러졌다. Geuneun wanjeonhi taljinhaeseo badage sseureojyeotda. "He was completely exhausted and passed out on the floor."	그는 물에 빠진 여자를 살려주었다. Geuneun mure ppajin yeojareul salryeaju-eotda. "He rescued a drowning woman."
오른쪽 엉덩이에 주사를 한대 맞았다. Oreunjjok eong-deong-i-e jusareul handae Majata. "I got a shot on my right buttock."	요리사는 요리를 준비하고 있습니다. Yorisaneun yorireul junbihago isseumnida. "The chef is preparing the dish."
심하게 춥지는 않아요. simhage chupjineun anayo. "It's not too cold."	어떤 증상이 있어요? eotteon jeungsang-i isseoyo? "What kind of symptoms do you have?"
저 사람은 고민이 하나도 없는 것 같아요. jeo saram-eun gomin-i hanado eopneun geot gatayo. "He seems like a man without worries."	병원에 가서 주사를 맞았어요. byeongwone gaseo jusareul majasseoyo. "I went to the hospital and got a shot."
일단, 밥부터 먹자! Ildan, babuteo meokja! "Let's eat first."	어깨에 힘 빼세요. Eokkae-e him ppaeseyo. "Relax your shoulders."

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

1. 탈진 (*taljin*) "exhaustion," "being drained"

탈진 (*taljin*) is a noun meaning "exhaustion," "being drained," "being fatigued," or "being wiped out." In order to make it a verb, add 하다 (*hada*) "to do" right after 탈진 (*taljin*) so it becomes 탈진하다 (*taljinhada*) "to be exhausted."

Let's take a look at some examples used in a sentence.

For Example:

1. 그는 심한 탈진증세로 병원에 실려갔다.
Geuneun simhan taljinjeungsero byeongwone silryeogatta.
"He was taken to the hospital for exhaustion."
2. 팀은 무리한 운동 때문에 탈진되어 갔다.
Timeun muriha undong ttaemune taljindoe-eo gatta.
"Tim was becoming exhausted as a result of excessive exercising."

2. 주사(를) 맞다 (*jusa(reul) matta*) "to have or get an injection (a shot)"

주사 (*jusa*) is a noun that literally means "an injection" or "a shot." 맞다 (*matta*) is a verb that literally means "to be hit," "to be struck," or "to be beaten." Therefore, all together, 주사를 맞다 (*jusareul matta*) means "to have or get a shot."

For Example:

1. 주사를 맞으면 좀 나아질 거예요...
Jusareul majeumyeon jom na-ajil geo-eyo...
"If you get a shot, you will feel better..."
2. 심한 탈진으로 엉덩이에 주사를 맞아야 해요...
Simhan taljineuro eongdeong-i-e jusareul majaya haeyo...
"You have to have an injection in a buttock for a severe exhaustion..."

3. (Name of body parts) + 에 힘을 빼다 (*e himeul ppaeda*) "to relax or to easy up one's (body parts)"

힘 (*him*) is a noun that literally means "strength," "force," or "energy." 빼다 (*ppaeda*) is a verb that literally means "to pull out," "to remove," or "to take out." Therefore, all together, 에 힘을 빼다 (*e himeul ppaeda*) means "to relax or to loosen one's (body parts)."

For Example:

1. 엉덩이에 힘을 빼세요.
Eongdeong-ie himeul ppaeseyo.
"Relax and loosen up your buttocks."
2. 팔에 힘을 빼세요...
Pare himeul ppaeseyo...
"Loosen or relax your arms..."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is about the VST + 나(요)? Speech Ending That We Use When Asking Questions.

주사 맞으면 괜찮아지나요?

Jusa majeumyeon gwenchanaji-nayo?

"Will they be all right if they get a shot?"

We use Verb Stem + 나(요) (*na(yo)*) when questioning a fact known to someone. First, let's talk about the speech ending...

Remember these points:

#1 - Use VST + 나? when you are speaking to and questioning someone younger than you (the speaker)

#2 - Use VST + 나요? (this ending shows **respect**) when you are speaking to and questioning someone older than you (the speaker).

Conjugation Rule

Verb Stem + 나(요)? (*na(yo)*) speech ending used when questioning a fact known to someone

Verb	Verb Stem + 나(요)?	Becomes...	"English"
------	-------------------	------------	-----------

1. 괜찮아지다 (gwaenchanajida) "to be all right," "to be okay"			
괜찮아지 + 나(요)?	괜찮아지나(요)?	"Will it (he/she) be all right?"	
2. 주사를 맞다 (jusareul matta) "to have(get) a shot"			
주사를 맞 + 나(요)?	주사를 맞나(요)?	"Will he/she get a shot?"	
3. 아프다 (apeuda) "to be hurt," "to be in pain (sick)"			
아프 + 나(요)?	아프나(요)?	"Are you sick/in pain?"	
4. 준비하다 (junbihada) "to prepare," "to get ready"			
준비하 + 나(요)?	준비하나(요)?	"Is he/she preparing something?"	

For Example:

- 의사 선생님, 주사를 맞으면 **괜찮아지나요?** (괜찮아지 + 나요 => 괜찮아지나요?)
Euisa seonsaengnim, jusareul majeumyeon gwaenchanajinayo?
 "(Will he) be all right after getting a shot, doc?"
- 저도 **주사를 맞나요?** 안 맞으면 안 되나요? (주사를 맞 + 나요 => 주사를 맞나요?)
Jeodo jusareul matnayo? An majeumyeon an doenayo?
 "Am I getting a shot as well? If I don't (get a shot), will that be a problem?"
- 간호사 님, 이 주사 **아프나요?** (아프 + 나요 => 아프나요?)
Ganhosa nim, i jusa apeunayo?
 "Nurse, will this shot hurt?"

4. 아버님, 여행 준비하시나요? (준비하 + *(시) + 나요 => 준비하시나요?)
Abeonim, yeohaeng junbihasinayo?
 "Father, are you preparing for a trip?"
 * Note: **-(으)시-** is a **honorific suffix** that shows respect to the subject of the sentence when we attach it to a verb stem.

Examples from This Dialogue

1. 주사 맞으면 괜찮아지나요?
Jusa majeumyeon gwenchanajinayo?
 "Will they be all right if they get a shot?"
2. 저도 맞아야 하나요?
Jeodo majaya hanayo?
 "Do I also need to get a shot?"
3. 두 대나 맞아야 하나요?
Du daena majaya hanayo?
 "I need to get two shots!"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

* 한국 병원 (*han-guk byeong-won*) "Korean Hospitals"

Here is some vocabulary related to 병원 (*byeong-won*) "hospital." Let's learn them one by one...

Korean	Romanization	"English"
병원	<i>byeong-won</i>	"hospital"
의사	<i>ui-sa</i>	"a doctor"
간호사	<i>ganhosa</i>	"a nurse"

주사	<i>jusa</i>	"a shot"/"an injection"
주사실	<i>jusasil</i>	"the injection room"
팔	<i>pal</i>	"arms"
엉덩이	<i>eong-deong-i</i>	"buttocks"
치료	<i>chiryo</i>	"medical treatment"

응급 상황시의 대처법 "In the Case of an Emergency in Korea"

1. Dial 119 to call for an ambulance. (If you need police officers, call 112.)
2. Explain and describe the situation in accordance with the "wh-" questions. Although the staff doesn't speak English, the staff will help you talk with English-speaking staff if you keep speaking in English on the phone.
3. Ask for help from others around you.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Intermediate S2 #21 Korean Chicken Soup for the Soul...and Body

CONTENTS

- 2 Korean Hangul
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 7 Grammar
- 9 Cultural Insight

21

KOREAN HANGUL

1. 철수: 아. 아직도 엉덩이가 아프네.
2. 고은: 수진아, 우리 애네들 삼계탕 먹게 하자.
3. 수진: 그럴까? 땀도 많이 흘렸고 주사까지 맞았으니까.
4. 아줌마: 어서 오세요.
5. 고은: 아줌마, 여기 삼계탕 4개 주세요.
6. 철수: 나는 자장면 곱빼기 먹고 싶은데.
7. 고은: 삼계탕 먼저 먹고, 나중에 자장면 먹게 해 줄게.
8. 철수: 정말? 자장면 먹을 생각하니 엉덩이의 아픔이 싹 사라지는구나.
9. 수진: 하하하! 자장면은 철수 엉덩이가 아픈 것도 잊게 하는구나!
10. 아줌마: 여기 삼계탕 나왔어요.
11. 팀: 우와. 맛있겠다.
12. 고은: 감사히 먹겠습니다.

ROMANIZATION

1. CHEOLSU: a. ajikdo eongdeongiga apeune.
2. GOEUN: sujina, uri yaenedeul samgyetang meokge haja.

CONT'D OVER

3. SUJIN: geureolkka? ttamdo mani heullyeotgo jusakkaji majaseunikka.
4. AJUMMA: eoseo oseyo.
5. GOEUN: ajumma, yeogi samgyetang 4gae juseyo.
6. CHEOLSU: naneun jajangmyeon goppaegi meokgo sipeunde.
7. GOEUN: samgyetang meonjeo meokgo, najunge jajangmyeon meokge hae julge.
8. CHEOLSU: jeongmal? jajangmyeon meogeul saenggakhani eongdeongiui apeumi ssak sarajineunguna.
9. SUJIN: hahaha! jajangmyeoneun cheolsu eongdeongiga apeun geotdo itge haneunguna!
10. AJUMMA: yeogi samgyetang nawasseoyo.
11. TIM: uwa. masitgetda.
12. GOEUN: gamsahi meokgetseumnida.

ENGLISH

1. CHEOLSU: Ouch! My butt still hurts!
2. GOEUN: Sujin, let's get them chicken soup with ginseng.
3. SUJIN: Should we? Well, they did sweat a lot and they even got a shot...

CONT'D OVER

4. WAITRESS: Come in! Welcome!
5. GOEUN: Can we have four bowls of chicken soup with ginseng?
6. CHEOLSU: I want an extra large bowl of black bean noodles.
7. GOEUN: Have the chicken soup with ginseng first, and then I'll let you have black bean noodles later.
8. CHEOLSU: Really? Just the thought of eating black bean noodles helps the pain in my butt go away.
9. SUJIN: Ha ha ha! I guess black bean noodles can help Cheolsu forget the pain in his butt!
10. WAITRESS: Here are your bowls of chicken soup with ginseng.
11. TIM: Wow! This looks delicious!
12. GOEUN: Thanks for the meal.

VOCABULARY

Hangul	Romanization	English	Class
아직도	ajikdo	still, yet	adverb
잊다	itda	to forget	verb
아픔	apeum	a pain, an ache	noun
나중에	najunge	some time later, another day	adverb
싶다	sipda	to want to	verb

어서오세요	eoseo oseyo!	Please come in! Welcome! (in shops, etc)	expression
감사히	gamsahi	gratefully, thankfully	adverb
아파	apa	It hurts. I'm sick. (intimate)	expression
땀을 흘리다	ttam-eul heullida	to sweat	phrase
나오다	naoda	to come out	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

왜 아직도 안 왔어? Wae ajikdo an wasseo? "Why are you still not here?"	아직도 공부해? Ajikdo gong-buhae? "Are you still studying?"
잊지 말고 전화 해! itjji malgo jeonhwa hae! "Don't forget to call me!"	이걸로 아픔을 잊을 수 있을 거예요. igeollo apeum-eul ijeul su isseul geo-yeyo. "This will make you forget your pain."
나중에 말해 주세요. najunge marhae juseyo. "Tell me later."	그러시면, 나중에 다시 전화해 주세요. geureosimyeon najunge dasi jeonhwahae juseyo. "If that's the case, then please call me again later."
한국에 가고 싶어요. Hanguge gago sipeoyo. "I want to go to Korea."	어서오세요. 몇 분이세요? Eoseo oseyo. Myeot buniseyo? "Please come in! How many people are with you?"

모든 성금을 감사히 받겠습니다. modeun seong-geumeul gamsahi badatgetseumnida. "All contributions will be gratefully received."	배 아파. Bae apa "I have a stomachache."
땀을 정말 많이 흘렸어요. ttam-eul jeongmal mani heullyeosseoyo. "I sweated so much."	주머니에서 이것이 나왔어요. jumeonieseo igeosi nawasseoyo. "This came out of my pocket."

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

1. 개 (*gae*) "items," "units," "objects"

개 (*gae*) is one of the counting units we use with Pure Korean Numbers.

 **Name of item or object + Pure Korean Number + 개 (*gae*)**

For Example:

- 여기 동전 열 개가 있습니다.
Yeogi dongjeon yeol gaega isseumnida.
"There are ten coins here."
- 저기 과자 다섯 개가 있습니다.
Jeogi gwaja daseot gaega isseumnida.
"There are five cookies over there."

2. 까지 (*kkaji*) "even," "besides"

까지 (*kkaji*) has various usages and we use it in different contexts, such as "until" ("till"), "to," "by," "up to," and so on...

In this lesson, 까지 (*kkaji*) indicates the meaning of "even" or "besides." Let's take a look at some examples.

For Example:

1. 팀은 밥을 다 먹고 나서 자장면 곱빼기까지 먹었다.
Timeun babeul da meokko naseo jajangmyeon goppaegi-kkaji meogeotta.
 "Tim even had an extra large bowl of black bean noodles after he finished eating his rice."
2. 비, 바람, 그리고 천둥까지 쳤다.
Bi, baram, geurigo cheondung-kkaji cheotta.
 "There was rain, wind, and even thunder."

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is about VST + 게 하다, which is the Causative Verb: "To Make," "to Have," or "to Let."

우리 애네들 삼계탕 먹게 하자...

Uri yenedeul samgyetang meokge haja...

"Let's get them chicken soup with ginseng..."

We use **VST + -게 하다 (*ge hada*)** to express "to have"/"to make"/"to let" someone do an action.

We can translate this expression, VERB + -게 하다, as "to make" or "to have" or "to let someone [VERB]."

Conjugation Rule

Verb Stem + 게 하다 (*ge hada*) "to make"/"to have"/"to let (someone do something)"

Verb	Verb Stem + 게 하다	Becomes...	"English"
1. 하다 (<i>hada</i>) "to do"	먹 + 게 하다	하게 하다	"to have (someone) do something"
2. 먹다 (<i>meoktta</i>) "to eat"	먹 + 게 하다	먹게 하다	"to make (someone) eat something"

3. 낫다 (<i>natta</i>) "to get better," "to recover"	낫 + 게 하다	낫게 하다	"to make (someone) get better "
4. 잊다 (<i>it-tta</i>) "to get (a matter) off one's mind," "to forget"	잊 + 게 하다	잊게 하다	"to let (someone) get (a matter) off his mind "

For Example:

1. 팀은 내가 하고 싶어하는 대로 하게 했다. (하 + 게 했다 => 하게 **했다**)
Timeun naega hago sipeohaneun daero hage haetta.
"Tim let me do what I wanted (to do)."
2. 철수는 (나에게) 과자를 먹게 하였습니다. (먹 + 게 하였습니다 => 먹게 **하였습니다**)
Cheolsu-neun (na-e-ge) gwajareul meoke ha-yeosseumnida.
"Cheolsu made me eat a cookie."
3. 의사 선생님은 내 병을 낫게 하였습니다. (낫 + 게 하였습니다 => 낫게 **하였습니다**)
Eu-sa seonsaeng-nimeun nae byeong-eul natke ha-yeosseumnida.
"The doctor cured my sickness."
4. 그녀의 웃음은 그의 아픔을 잊게 했어요. (잊 + 게 했어요 => 잊게 **했어요**)
Geunyeo-ui useumeun geu-ui apeumeul itke haesseoyo.
"Her smile helped (to make) him forget the pain."

Examples from This Dialogue

1. 우리 애네들 삼계탕 먹게 하자.
Uri yenedeul samgyetang meokge haja.
"Let's get them chicken soup with ginseng."
2. 나중에 자장면 먹게 해 줄게.
Najung-e jajangmyeon meoke hae julke.
"Then I'll let you have black bean noodles later."

3. 자장면은 철수 엉덩이의 아픔도 잊게 하는구나!
Jajangmyeon-eun cheolsu eong-deong-i-ui apeumdo ikke haneunguna!
"I guess black bean noodles can help Cheosu forget his pain!"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

* 삼계탕 (*sam-gye-tang*) "Chicken Soup with Ginseng"

삼계탕 (*sam-gye-tang*) is a traditional Korean dish that is a mixture of 국 (*guk*) "soup," 닭 (*dak*) "a whole chicken," and 인삼 (*in-sam*) "ginseng."

삼계탕 is well known for being able to replace lost nutrients through excessive sweating or severe exhaustion.

The name of the dish literally means:

- 삼 (*sam*) "ginseng"
- 계 (*gye*) "a whole chicken"
- 탕 (*tang*) "soup"

All together, 삼계탕 means "chicken soup with ginseng." Even though the soup is a hot dish, we usually eat it during the hot summers in Korea.

Cultural Belief in 삼계탕

Many Korean people believe that 삼계탕 (*sam-gye-tang*) can cure and prevent physical ailments.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Intermediate S2 #22

Who's the Designated Driver on this Korean Road Trip?

CONTENTS

- 2 Korean Hangul
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 7 Grammar
- 10 Cultural Insight

22

KOREAN HANGUL

1. 수진: 와. 삼계탕 정말 맛있다! 그렇지? 팀?
2. 팀: 어! 그리고 먹으면 먹을수록 힘이 솟는 것 같아.
3. 수진: 뭐? 먹을수록 힘이 솟아!?? 하하하.
4. 고은: 철수야. 너는? 너도 먹을수록 힘이 솟아?
5. 철수: 아니. 나는 먹을수록 조금씩 잠이 오네.
6. 수진: 그러고 보니, 우리 날을 샀구나. 근데 운전은 누가 할 거야?
7. 팀: 물론, 내가 해야지!
8. 수진: 아니야. 내가 할게!
9. 철수: 아니야. 수진아. 제일 건강하고 듬직한 내가 해야지!
10. 고은: 아니야. 철수는 운전대도 먹을지 몰라. 내가 할게!
11. 팀: 야! 그럼 그러지 말고. 우리 3.6.9로 정하자. 이기는 사람이 운전하는 걸로.
12. 철수: 좋았어!

ROMANIZATION

1. SUJIN: wa. samgyetang jeongmal masitda! geureochi? tim?
2. TIM: eo! geurigo meogeumyeon meogeulsurok himi sonneun geot gachi.

CONT'D OVER

3. SUJIN: mwo? meogeulsurok himi sosa!?? hahaha.
4. GOEUN: cheolsuya. neoneun? neodo meogeulsurok himi sosa?
5. CHEOLSU: ani. naneun meogeulsurok jogeumssik jami one.
6. SUJIN: geureogo boni, uri nareul saetguna. geunde unjeoneun nuga hal geoya?
7. TIM: mullon, naega haeyaji!
8. SUJIN: aniya. naega halge!
9. CHEOLSU: aniya. sujina. jeil geonganghago deumjikhana naega haeyaji!
10. GOEUN: aniya. cheolsuneun unjeondaedo meogeulji molla. naega halge!
11. TIM: ya! geureom geureoji malgo. uri 3.6.9ro jeonghaja. igineun sarami unjeonhaneun geollo.
12. CHEOLSU: joasseo!

ENGLISH

1. SUJIN: Wow! The chicken soup with ginseng is really delicious! Isn't it, Tim?
2. TIM: Yes! The more I eat it, the more energetic I feel!
3. SUJIN: What? You feel more energetic as you eat it? Ha ha ha!

CONT'D OVER

4. GOEUN: What about you, Cheolsu? Do you feel more energetic the more you eat?
5. CHEOLSU: No. The more I eat, the sleepier I become.
6. SUJIN: Come to think of it, we've been up all night. But who's going to drive?
7. TIM: Of course, that'll be me!
8. SUJIN: No, I'll drive!
9. CHEOLSU: No. Sujin, I should drive because I'm the healthiest and most reliable!
10. GOEUN: No. Cheolsu might eat the steering wheel if he drives. I'll do it!
11. TIM: Hey! Then let's do this. Why don't we decide who gets to drive by playing the "three, six, nine" game?
12. CHEOLSU: That sounds good!

VOCABULARY

Hangul	Romanization	English	Class
좋았어!	joasseo	Good!, You're on!	expression
정하다	jeonghada	to decide, to fix	verb
운전대	unjeondae	steering wheel	noun
제일	jeil	the most, the best	adverb
믿직한	deumjikan	reliable	adjective
누가	nuga	who	pronoun

운전하다	unjeonhada	to drive	verb
잠이 오다	jami oda	to become sleepy, to feel sleepy	phrase
조금씩	jogeumssik	little by little	adverb
이기는 사람	igineun saram	winner	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

좋았어! 해보자! Joasseo! Haeboja! "Good! Let's do it!"	뭐 먹을지 정했어요? mwo meogeulji jeonghaesseoyo? "Did you decide what to eat?"
제가 운전대를 왼쪽으로 돌렸어요. Jega unjeondae-reul oenjjogeuro dolryeotseoyo. "I turned the steering wheel to the left."	공부가 제일 쉬워요. gongbuga jeil swiwoyo. "Studying is the easiest thing to do."
저는 든직한 사람이 좋아요. Jeoneun deumjikan sarami joayo. "I like a reliable person."	누가 건 전화든 상관없이 여기에서는 전화를 사용할 수 없어요. nuga geon jeonhwadeun sanggwaneopsi yeogieseoneun jeonhwareul sayonghal su eopseoyo. "I don't care who is calling, you cannot use the phone here."
누가 뽑혔어요? nuga ppophyeosseoyo? "Who was chosen?"	술 마시고 운전하면 안돼요. sul masigo unjeonhamyon andoaeyo. "You can't drink and drive."
아기는 잠이 올 때면, 울어요. Agineun jami ol ttaemyeon, ureoyo. "A baby cries when she feels sleepy."	제 한국어가 조금씩 나아지고 있어요. Je hangugeoga jogeumssik na-ajigo itseoyo. "My Korean is improving little by little."

이기는 사람이 이 상을 받을 거예요.
lgineun sarami i sang-eul badeul geo-e-yo.

"The winner will receive this prize."

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

1. 힘이 솟다 (*himi sotdda*) "to feel energetic"

Let's break the phrase down.

힘 (*heem*) is a noun that means "(physical) strength or energy."

솟다 (*sotdda*) is a verb that means "to surge up," "to soar," or "to rise."

Therefore, 힘이 솟다 (*heemi sotdda*) means "to feel energetic."

For Example:

1. 팀은 갑자기 힘이 솟기 시작했다.
Timeun gapjjagi himi sotkki sijakhaetta.
"Tim suddenly began to feel energetic."
2. 가족을 생각하면 힘이 마구 솟아요!
Gajogeul saeng-gakhamyeon himi magu sosayo!
"When I think about my family, I start to feel so energetic!"

2. 날 새다 (*nal saeda*) "to stay up all night"

Let's break the phrase down.

날 (*nal*) is a noun that means "daybreak" or "day."

새다 (*saeda*) is a verb that means "to dawn" or "to break morning."

Therefore, 날 새다 (*nal saeda*) means "to stay up all night."

For Example:

1. 팀은 날이 샐 때까지 밤을 새웠다.
Timeun nari sael ttae-kkaji bameul saewot-tta.
"Tim stayed up until daybreak."

2. 우리는 날이 새자마자 집으로 향했다.

Urineun nari saejamaja jibeuro hyanghaet-tta.

"We went back home as soon as it was daybreak."

3. (Name of game) + (으)로 정하다 ((eu)ro jeonghada) "to decide or to determine something by the outcome of the game"

Let's break down the phrase.

(으)로 ((eu)ro) is a preposition that indicates the meaning of "means," "way," or "method." We can translate it into "by" or "through."

정하다 (jeonghada) is a verb that means "to decide," "to determine," or "to make up one's mind (to)."

Therefore, (name of game) + (으)로 정하다 ((eu)ro jeonghada) means "to decide or to determine something by the outcome of the game."

For Example:

1. '3.6.9' 게임으로 술래를 정하자!

'Sam. yuk. gu' geimeuro sulraereul jeonghaja!

"Let's decide who's 'it' by playing the 'three, six, nine' game!"

2. '가위, 바위, 보'로 우선순위를 정하자!

'Gawi, bawi, bo'ro useonsunwireul jeonghaja!

"Let's play 'rock, paper, scissors' to decide the order!"

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is about VST + ㄹ/을 수록, meaning "The More You [Verb], the More You Do [something]."

나는 먹을수록 조금씩 잠이 오네...

Naneun meogeulsurok jogeumssik jami o-ne...

"The more I eat, the sleepier I become..."

VST + ㄹ/을 수록 (r/eul su-rok) "The More You [Verb], the More You Do [Something]"

The focus of today's lesson is on VST + ㄹ/을 수록, which we often use to express "the more

[Verb]..., the more [Verb]..." We can translate this expression as "the more you [Verb], the more you feel or do something..."

The most frequently used expression would be 하면 할수록 는다 (*hamyeon halsurok neunda*), meaning "the more you do, the better you become."

Let's take a look at the conjugation rule!

Conjugation Rule

Verb Stem + ㄹ/을 수록 (*--r/eul surok*) "the more you [Verb], the more you feel (do) something else"

* Note: You may add (Verb Stem + (으)면) before the expression.

Rule #1: Verb Stem + ㄹ 수록: If there is no 받침 (ending in a vowel) or if the adjective or verb stem ends with a ㄹ 받침

Rule #2: Verb Stem + 을 수록 - If there is a 받침 (ending in a consonant) at the end of the adjective or verb stem

Verb	Verb Stem + ㄹ/을 수록	Becomes...	"English"
1. 하다 {Rule #1} (<i>hada</i>) "to do"	(하 + 면) 하 + ㄹ 수록	(하면) 할 수록	"the more I do, the more I..."
2. 먹다 {Rule #2} (<i>meoktta</i>) "to eat"	(먹 + 으면) 먹 + 을 수록	(먹으면) 먹을 수록	"the more I eat, the more I..."
3. 보다 {Rule #1} (<i>boda</i>) "to see"/"to watch"	(보 + 면) 보 + ㄹ 수록	(보면) 볼 수록	"the more I see, the more I..."

4. 알다 *{'ㄹ' verb}

(*alda*)

"to know"/"to have
(good) knowledge
of"

(알 + 면) 알 + 수록

(알면) 알수록

"the more I know,
the more I..."

* 'ㄹ' 동사 "'r/l' Verb": If the verb stem ends with 'ㄹ' consonant, simply add 면 and 수록 after the verb stem.

For Example:

1. 알다 "to know" => (알 + 면) 알 + 수록 => (알면) 알수록
2. 놀다 "to play" => (놀 + 면) 놀 + 수록 => (놀면) 놀수록

Sample Sentences

1. 한국어 공부를 많이 (하면) 할수록, 한국어 실력이 향상될거야! (하+면) 하 + ㄹ수록 => (하면) 할수록
Hangugeo gongbureul mani (hamyeon) halsurok, hangugeo silryeogi hyangsangdoelkkeoya!
"The more you study Korean, the more you will improve on your Korean!"
2. 간식을 (먹으면) 먹을수록, 살이 찌게 될거야... (먹+으면) 먹 + 을수록 => (먹으면) 먹을수록
Gansigeul (meogeumyeon) meogeulsurok, sari jjige doelkkeoya.
"The more snacks you eat, the more weight you will gain..."
3. 데비는 (보면) 볼수록 괜찮은 사람 같아... (보+면) 보 + ㄹ수록 => (보면) 볼수록
Debineun (bomyeon) bolssurok gwaenchaneun saram gata.
"The more I see of Debbie, the more I like her."
4. 팀은 (알면) 알수록 마음에 들어... (알+면) 알 + 수록 => (알면) 알수록
Timeun (al-myeon) alsurok ma-eume deureo.
"The more I know of Tim, the more I like him."

1. 먹으면 먹을수록 힘이 솟는 것 같아~~
meogeu-myeon megeulsurok himi sotneun geot gata~~
"And the more I eat it, the more energetic I feel!"
2. 너도 먹을수록 힘이 솟아?
Neodo meogeulsurok himi sosa?
"Do you feel more energetic (the more you eat)?"
3. 나는 먹을수록 조금씩 잠이 오네...
Naneun meogeulsurok jogeumssik jami o-ne...
"The more I eat, the sleepier I become..."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

* Cultural Belief in 삼계탕 (*sam-gye-tang*) "Ginseng Chicken Soup"

Many Korean people believe that 삼계탕 (*sam-gye-tang*) can cure and prevent physical ailments.

* A Korean Game Called 3.6.9 (*Sam. Yuk. Gu*) "Three. Six. Nine"

The Korean game called Three Six Nine is one of the most popular games among young people today.

Why did the 3.6.9 game become so popular?

Like the game, the answer is simple! It has become so popular because the rules are easy to follow, and it is the perfect game to play in a social setting.

What are the rules for 3.6.9?

The rules are very simple. You must not count (or say) any number that has a digit that is a three, six, or nine, and you must **CLAP your hands** instead.

 Game setting (how to play):

The players usually sit in a circle and say, "**Three six nine! Three six nine! Three six nine! Three six nine!**" all together. Then one person starts counting from the number one, and each person after that says one number. **They** count up in numerical order: one, two, **Clap!**, four, five, **Clap!**...twelve, **Clap!**, fourteen...etc.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Intermediate S2 #23

Let's Play 3.6.9 Together in Korea!

CONTENTS

- 2 Korean Hangul
- 2 Romanization
- 4 English
- 5 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 8 Grammar
- 10 Cultural Insight

23

KOREAN HANGUL

1. 팀, 수진, 철수, 고은 : 일"1", 이"2", "짜!", 사"4", 오"5", 육"6"!
은 :
2. 수진: 아.!!
3. 철수: 수진이 너, 틀렸구나! 자. 그럼, 수진이는 빠지고.
4. 철수, 고은, 팀: 일"1", 이"2", 삼"3"!!!
5. 팀: 아.!!
6. 철수: 팀, 너도 걸렸구나!
7. 수진: 팀, 완전 실망이야. 삼"3"에서 걸리다니!!! 난 그래도 육"6"까지라도 갔지!!!
8. 팀: 수진, 미안해! 나도 내가 창피해 죽겠어.
9. 고은: 자. 이젠 나하고 철수, 둘이 남았네. 철수야, 하자!
10. 철수, 고은: 일"1", 이"2", "짜!", 사"4", 오"5", "짜!", 육"6"!
11. 철수: 아.!!
12. 고은: 철수 너 틀렸어! 육"6"은 내가 했으니까 넌 칠"7"이지.
13. 팀: 철수야, 너 바보구나. 육"6"다음엔 칠"7"이지! 하하하.
14. 철수: 그럼, 우리 다 바보 친구들인가!!? 하하하!!!
15. 고은: 자, 차 열쇠 이리 줘. 자. 이제 집으로 출발.!!!

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. TIM, SUJIN,
CHEOLSU,
GOEUN : il"1", i"2", "jjak!", sa"4", o"5", yuk"6"!
2. SUJIN: a.!!
3. CHEOLSU: sujini neo, teulleyotguna! ja. geureom, sujinineun ppajigo.
4. CHEOLSU,
GOEUN, TIM: il"1", i"2", sam"3"!!!
5. TIM: a.!!
6. CHEOLSU: tim, neodo geolleyotguna!
7. SUJIN: tim, wanjeon silmangiya. sam"3"eseo geollidani!!! nan geuraedo yuk"6"kkajirado gatji!!!
8. TIM: sujin, mianhae! nado naega changpihae jukgesseo.
9. GOEUN: ja. ijen nahago cheolsu, duri namanne. cheolsuya, haja!
10. CHEOLSU,
GOEUN: il"1", i"2", "jjak!", sa"4", o"5", "jjak!", yuk"6"!
11. CHEOLSU: a.!!
12. GOEUN: cheolsu neo teulleyosseo! yuk"6"eun naega haeseunikka neon chil"7"iji.
13. TIM: cheolsuya, neo baboguna. yuk"6"daeumen chil"7"iji! hahaha.

CONT'D OVER

14. CHEOLSU: geureom, urin da babo chingudeuringa!!? hahaha!!!
15. GOEUN: ja, cha yeolsoe iri jwo. ja. ije jibeuro chulbal.!!!

ENGLISH

1. TIM, SUJIN,
CHEOLSU,
GOEUN: "One," "Two," "CLAP!" "Four," "Five," "Six!"
2. SUJIN: Oh no!
3. CHEOLSU: Hey, Sujin, you just made a mistake! Well. Sujin is out.
4. CHEOLSU,
GOEUN, TIM: "One," "Two," "Three!"
5. TIM: Oh no!
6. CHEOLSU: Hey, Tim, you're busted too!
7. SUJIN: I am so disappointed in you, Tim. I can't believe you messed up at three! At least I messed up at six!
8. TIM: Sujin, I'm sorry! I'm embarrassed for myself too!
9. GOEUN: Now it's just Cheolsu and me. Let's do it, Cheolsu!
10. CHEOLSU,
GOEUN: "One," "Two," "CLAP!" "Four," "Five," "CLAP!" "Six!"

CONT'D OVER

11. CHEOLSU: Oh no!
12. GOEUN: You messed up, Cheolsu! You should have said "seven" instead of "six" because I clapped at "six."
13. TIM: Hey, Cheolsu, you're so dumb. "Seven" comes after "six," ha ha ha!
14. CHEOLSU: Then that would mean you're all fools because you're my friends, right? Ha ha.
15. GOEUN: Okay. Give me the car keys. Let's hit the road and head home!

VOCABULARY

Hangul	Romanization	English	Class
틀리다	teullida	to be wrong	verb
열쇠	yeolsoe	key	noun
바보	babo	fool	noun
남다	namda	to stay	verb
창피하다	changpihada	to be embarrassed	verb
걸리다	geollida	to get caught	
실망이다	silmang-ida	to be disappointed	verb
완전	wanjeon	very, quite (slang)	
빠지다	ppajida	to be out	verb
이리	iri	over here, here, to this side	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

전화번호가 틀렸어요. Jeonhwabeonho-ga teullyeosseoyo "The phone number is wrong."	이 열쇠는 앞문 열쇠다. i yeolsoeneun ammun yeolsoeda. "This is the key to the front door."
열쇠가 어디 있나요? yeolsoega eodi innayo? "Where is the key?"	바보같은 짓 하지마! Babogateun jit hajima! "Don't be a fool!"
방과 후에 남아서 공부해. banggwa hu-e namaseo gongbuhae. "Stay after school and study."	넘어졌어. 창피해. neomeojyeosseo. changpihae. "Argh...I fell down. I'm embarrassed."
선생님한테 걸렸어요. seonsaengnim-hante geollyeosseoyo. "I got caught by the teacher."	날씨가 좋지 않아서 실망이에요. nalssi-ga jochi anaseo silmang-ieyo. "I'm disappointed that the weather is not nice."
이 영화 완전 웃겨요. I yeong-hwa wanjeon utgyeo-yo. "This movie is quite funny."	나를 꽁꽁 묶었던 사슬에서 빠져나와서 난 기쁩니다. Na-reul ggong-ggong-muk-eot-deon sa-seul-e-seo bba-jyeo-na-wa-seo nan gi-bbeum-nida. "I'm glad I freed myself from the chains that bound me."
이리 와서 앉으세요. iri waseo anjeuseyo. "Come here and sit."	이리 와서 나 좀 도와줘. Iri waseo na jom dowajwo. "Come over here and please help me out a bit."

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

1. 틀리다 (*teulrida*) "to be wrong," "to be incorrect," or "to make an error"

틀리다 (*teulrida*) is a verb that we often use when someone makes a mistake or an error.

틀린 (*teulrin*) is an adjective that means "wrong," "false," "mistaken," or "improper."

틀림 (*teulrim*) is a noun that means "an error," "a fault," "a mistake," or "being wrong."
Let's take a look at some example sentences...

For Example:

1. 너의 잘못은 없어... 내가 틀렸어!
Neo-ui jalmoseun eopsseo... naega teulryeosseo!
"You did not make a mistake... I was mistaken!"
2. 당신이 틀렸다는 것을 꼭 증명해 보이겠습니다.
Dangsini teulryeotdaneun geoseul kkok jeungmyeonghae boigesseumnida.
"I will definitely prove that you were wrong."
3. 데비, 틀린 곳이 있으면 고쳐 주세요.
Debi, teulrin gosi isseu-myeon gochyeo juseyo.
"Debbie, if there are any mistakes, please correct them."

2. 걸리다 (*geolrida*) "to be busted"

걸리다 (*geolrida*) has a number of meanings in Korean.
Let's take a look at some of the meanings of 걸리다 (*geolrida*).

#1. "to hang or to be hung"

For Example:

1. 내 셔츠는 벽에 걸려 있습니다.
"My shirt is hanging on the wall."

#2. "to take or to require time"

For Example:

1. 밥을 하는 데 시간이 좀 걸립니다.
"It takes some time to cook rice."

#3. "to be caught in a net or a trap"

For Example:

1. 토끼가 덫에 걸렸습니다.
"A rabbit was caught in a trap."

#4. "to get sick or to catch an illness"

For Example:

1. 감기에 걸렸습니다.
"I caught a cold."

#5. "to be busted"

For Example:

1. 넌 걸렸어!
"You are busted!"

In today's conversation, 걸리다 (*geolrida*) means "to be busted."

For Example:

1. 팀은 경찰에 걸렸습니다.
Timeun gyeongchare geolryeotsseumnida.
"Tim was busted by the police."
2. (놀이를 하다가) 너 딱 걸렸어! 이제 네가 술래야!
(Nori-reul hadaga) Neo ttak geolryeosseo! lje nega sulraeya!
(While playing a game) "You were so busted! Now you're it!"

GRAMMAR

Speaker Is Certain about What the Speaker Is Saying (Informal).

너도 걸렸구나!

Neodo geolryeokkuna!

"You were busted too!"

The focus of this lesson is on the usage **VST + (는)구나 ((neun)guna)**, which we use when **we are certain about what we are saying**.

* Note: There is a very similar expression, **VST + 군(요)' (gun(yo))**, which also expresses the speaker's certainty, but we use it in formal situations.

In many sentences, **we use Verb Stem + (는)구나 ((neun)guna)** as an **exclamation(s) or exclamatory sentence**.

Conjugation Rule

Verb Stem + (는)구나 ((neun)guna) establishes a speaker's certainty

Rule #1: We attach **구나 (guna)** to the past verb stem.

Rule #2: We attach **는구나 (neunguna)** to the (present) verb stem.

For Example:

Verb	Verb Stem + 구나	Becomes...	"English"
1. 틀렸다 {rule #1} (<i>teulryeot-tta</i>) "was wrong, made a mistake"	틀렸 + 구나	(너) 틀렸구나!	"(You) were wrong!" / "(You) made a mistake!"
2. 걸렸다 {rule #1} (<i>geolryeot-tta</i>) "was busted"	걸렸 + 구나	(너) 걸렸구나!	"(You) were busted!"
3. 남다 {rule #2} (<i>namtta</i>) "to remain" / "to be left"	남 + 는구나	남는구나!	"(Something / Someone) is left!"
4. 빠지다 {rule #2} (<i>ppajida</i>) "to be left out" / "to be dropped"	빠지 + 는구나	빠지는구나!	"(Something / Someone) is left out!"

* Note: We also use it with noun + 이구나, as in 팀이구나! meaning "You are Tim!"

For Example:

1. 이번에 네 계산은 틀렸구나! (틀렸 + 구나 => 틀렸구나)
Ibeone ne gyesaneun teulryeotkkuna!
"Your calculations are off this time!"
2. 너 도둑질하다가 걸렸구나! (걸렸 + 구나 => 걸렸구나)
Neo dodukjil-hadaga geolryeotkkuna!
"You got caught while you were stealing something!"
3. 결국, 나 혼자만 남는구나! (남 + 는구나 => 남는구나)
Gyeolguk, na honjaman namneunguna!
"I am the only one left after all!"
4. 팀은 게임에서 졌으니까 빠지는구나! (빠지 + 는구나 => 빠지는구나)
Timeun geimeseo jyeosseunikka ppajineunguna!
"Tim is (left) out because he lost the game!"

Examples from This Dialogue

1. 수진이 너, 틀렸구나!
Sujini neo, teulryeotguna!
"Hey, Sujin, you just made a mistake!"
2. 팀, 너도 걸렸구나!
Tim, neodo geolryeokkuna!
"Hey, Tim, you were busted too!"
3. 철수야, 너 바보구나...
Cheolsuya, neo baboguna...
"Hey, Cheolsu, you are a fool..."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

More about the Rules of the Korean Game "3.6.9"

Let's play 삼.육.구 (*sam.yuk.gu*) "three. six. nine" with Tim and Debbie (or with your friends)!

What Are the Rules for "3.6.9?"

The rules are very simple: you must not count (or say) any number that has a three, six, or nine digit, and you must **CLAP your hands** instead.

Game Setting (How to Play)

The players usually sit in a circle and chant "**Three, six, nine! Three, six, nine! Three, six, nine! Three, six, nine!**" all together. Then one person starts counting from the number one, and each person after that says one number. Count up in numerical order: "One," "two," **Clap!** "Four," "five," **Clap!**... "Twelve," **Clap!** "Fourteen," etc. If players meet the numbers like "thirty-three," "sixty-six," or "thirty-six," they should clap twice.

LESSON NOTES

Lower Intermediate S2 #24

Staying Awake by Playing Korean Games

CONTENTS

- 2 Korean Hangul
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 8 Grammar
- 10 Cultural Insight

24

KOREAN HANGUL

1. 철수: 팀하고 수진이는 자네.
2. 철수: 고은아, 괜찮아? 피곤하지 않아?
3. 고은: 좀 피곤은 하지만 그래도 괜찮아.
4. 철수: 뭐 피곤해!? 야, 팀, 수진 일어나!
5. 팀: 왜, 철수야!? 무슨 일이야?
6. 철수: 고은이가 피곤하대. 이제 그만 자고 뭔가를 해서 고은이의 운전을 도와주자!
7. 팀: 그래? 그럼 철수 네가 노래를 부름으로써 고은이를 도와줘.
8. 철수: 뭐!? 내가 노래를 부름으로써!? 난 음치잖아. 그러지 말고 수진아 네가 뭔가를 해봐.
9. 수진: 음. 우리 그러지 말고, 진실 게임을 하자.
10. 팀: 아. 그래, 고은이도 말을 해야 하니까 진실 게임을 함으로써 피곤함을 풀 수 있을 거야!
11. 고은: 좋아! 그럼 나부터, "철수, 너 나 사랑해!?"
12. 팀: 와. 처음부터 너무 강하다! 하하하.

ROMANIZATION

1. CHEOLSU: timhago sujinineun jane.

CONT'D OVER

2. CHEOLSU: goeuna, gwaenchana? pigonhaji ana?
3. GOEUN: jom pigoneun hajiman geuraedo gwaenchana.
4. CHEOLSU: mwo pigonhae!? ya, tim, sujin ireona!
5. TIM: wae, cheolsuya!? museun iriya?
6. CHEOLSU: goeuniga pigonhadae. ije geuman jago mwongareul haeseo goeuniui unjeoneul dowajuja!
7. TIM: geurae? geureom cheolsu nega noraereul bureumeurosseo goeunireul dowajwo.
8. CHEOLSU: mwo!? naega noraereul bureumeurosseo!? nan eumchijana. geureoji malgo sujina nega mwongareul haebwa.
9. SUJIN: eum. uri geureoji malgo, jinsil geimeul haja.
10. TIM: a. geurae, goeunido mareul haeya hanikka jinsil geimeul hameurosseo pigonhameul pul su isseul geoya!
11. GOEUN: joa! geureom nabuteo, "cheolsu, neo na saranghae!?"
12. TIM: wa. cheoeumbuteo neomu ganghada! hahaha.

ENGLISH

1. CHEOLSU: Tim and Sujin are sleeping.

CONT'D OVER

2. CHEOLSU: Goeun, are you all right? Don't you feel tired?
3. GOEUN: I'm feeling a little tired, but I am still okay.
4. CHEOLSU: What? Feeling tired? Hey guys, Tim and Sujin, wake up!
5. TIM: Why, what's the matter, Cheolsu?
6. CHEOLSU: Goeun feels a bit tired. Wake up and do something for her so that she can drive a little more safely.
7. TIM: Really? Why don't you divert her by singing a song for her?
8. CHEOLSU: What? By singing a song for her? I can't carry a tune. Could you do something for her, Sujin, instead?
9. SUJIN: Hmm. Why don't we play Truth or Lie instead?
10. TIM: Yes, her fatigue will go away by playing Truth or Lie since she can talk while driving!
11. GOEUN: Sure! Then let's start with me... "Do you love me, Cheolsu?"
12. TIM: Wow. What an exciting start, ha ha!

VOCABULARY

Hangul	Romanization	English	Class
풀다	pulda	to rest up, to recover from fatigue	verb
피곤함	pi-gon-ham	tiredness	noun

피곤하다	pigonhada	to be tired	verb
일어나!	ireona	Get up!	expression
뭔가	mwonga	something	noun
노래(를) 부르다	norae(reul) bureuda	to sing a song	phrase
부터	buteo	from	particle, preposition
음치	eum-chi	tone deaf	noun
강하다	ganghada	to be strong	verb
처음	cheoeum	the first time	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

팀은 노래방에서 노래를 부름으로써 피로를 풀 수가 있었습니다. Timeun noraebang-eso noraereul bureumeurosseo pioreul pul suga isseosseumnida. "Tim can rest up by singing at karaoke."	피곤함을 풀기 위해 잠을 많이 잤어요. Pigonhameul pulgi wihae jameul mani jatseoyo. "I slept a lot to get rid of tiredness."
어제는 피곤해서 일찍 잤어. eojeneun pigonhaeseo iljjik jasseo. "I was tired yesterday, so I went to bed early."	오늘 너무 피곤해요. oneul neomu pigonhaeyo. "I'm so tired today."
빨리 일어나! ppalli ireona! "Get up quickly!"	뭔가 잘못된 것 같아요. mwonga jalmotdoen geot gatayo. "I think something's wrong."

뭔가가 이상해. mwongaga isanghae. "Something is strange."	문득 든 생각인데, 니가 노래를 부르면 어떨까? mundeuk deun saenggak-inde, ni-ga nora-reul bureumyeon eotteolkka? "I suddenly came up with this thought: how about you sing a song?"
그 가게는 오전 9시부터 연다. geu gageneun ojeon ahopsibuteo yeonda. "The store is open from 9 AM."	오늘부터 수영 배워요. oneulbuteo suyeong baewoyo. "I'm going to learn swimming from today."
저는 음치이지만, 제 아내는 노래를 잘 합니다. Jeoneun eumchi-ijiman, je anaeneun noraereul jal hamnida. "I am tone deaf but my wife is a good singer."	김치의 맛은 강합니다. Gimchiui maseun ganghapnida. "Kimchi has a strong taste."
여기는 처음 와 봤어요. yeogineun cheoeum wa bwasseoyo. "It's the first time I've ever been here."	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

1. 피곤하다 (*pigonhada*) "to be tired," "to be exhausted," or "to be fatigued"

Its synonym is 피로하다 (*pirohada*), meaning "to be tired or to be fatigued."

Let's break the word down.

피곤 (*pigon*) is a noun that means "tiredness," "exhaustion," or "fatigue."

하다 (*hada*) is a verb that means "to do."

Therefore, 피곤하다 (*pigonhada*) means "to be tired or to be exhausted."

For Example:

1. 어젯밤에 잠을 못 자서 피곤해...
Eojebame jameul mot jaseo pigonhae...
"I am tired because I couldn't sleep last night..."
2. 팀 때문에 피곤해 죽겠어!
Tim ttaemune pigonhae jukkesseo!
"I am tired to death because of Tim!"

2. 노래를 부르다 (*noraereul bureuda*) "to sing a song"

Let's break the word down.

노래 (*norae*) is a noun that means "a song."

부르다 (*bureuda*) is a verb that means "to call" or "to sing."

Therefore, 노래를 부르다 (*noraereul bureuda*) means "to sing a song."

For Example:

1. 지금 데비가 노래를 부르고 있어.
Jigeum debiga noraereul bureugo isseo.
"Debbie is singing a song right now."
2. 팀이 노래를 불렀고 데비는 잠을 깼어요!
Timi noraereul bulryeokko debineun jameul kkaesseoyo!
"Tim sang a song, and Debbie was awakened (by his song)!"

3. 음치 (*eumchi*) "a bad singer" or "tone deaf (person)"

음치 (*eumchi*) is a noun that we use to describe a person with "almost no musical sense."

For Example:

1. 팀 노래를 들어봐! 정말 음치야!
Tim noraereul deureobwa! Jeongmal eumchiya!
"Listen to Tim's song. He sings way off key!"

2. 팀은 음치이지만 한국어는 잘해요!
Timeun eumchi-ijiman han-kugeoneun jalhaeyo!
 "(Although) Tim is tone deaf, but he is good at Korean!"

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Verb Stem + ㅁ / 음 으로서' (*m/eum eurosseo*), which Is an Adverb Marker That Specifies the Manner or Way to Achieve an End.

네가 노래를 부름으로서 고운이를 도와줘...

Nega noraereul bureumeurosseo Goeunireul dowajwo...

"Why don't you divert her by singing a song for her...?"

The focus of this lesson is the usage of **VST + ㅁ / 음 으로서' (*m/eum eurosseo*)**, an adverb marker that we use to indicate the tool, method, or purpose used for achieving an end.

* Note: There is a very similar expression, [the status or social definition of someone] + (으)로서 ((*eu*)*rosseo*), which is an adverb marker that we use to indicate "the status or social authority of somebody." For more information on Noun + (으)로서, please have a look at Lower Intermediate Season 2 Lesson 6.

Let's take a look at its conjugation rules and some example sentences.

Conjugation Rules

VERB STEM + ㅁ/음 으로서 (*m/eum eurosseo*) "by doing something"

Rule #1: Verb Stem + ㅁ 으로서 - If there is no 받침 (ending in a vowel) or if the noun ends with a ㄹ 받침

Rule #2: Verb Stem + 음 으로서 - If there is a 받침 (ending in a consonant) at the end of the noun

For Example:

Verb (Rule #1)	Verb Stem + ㅁ으로써	Becomes...	"English"
----------------	------------------	------------	-----------

1. 하다 (<i>hada</i>) "to do"	하 + ㅁ으로써	함으로써...	"By doing something..."
2. 부르다 (<i>bureuda</i>) "to sing (a song)"	부르 + ㅁ으로써	부름으로써...	"By singing a song..."
Verb (Rule #2)	Verb Stem + 음으로 써	Becomes...	"English"
3. 먹다 (<i>meoktta</i>) "to eat"	먹 + 음으로써	먹음으로써...	"By eating something..."
4. 풀다 (<i>pulda</i>) "to recover from fatigue"	풀 + 음으로써	풀음으로써...	"By recovering from fatigue..."

For Example:

- 데비는 자원봉사를 함으로써 어려운 사람들을 도왔습니다. (하 + ㅁ으로써 => 함으로써)
Debineun jawonbongsareul hameurosseo eoryeo-un saramdeureul dowsasseumnida.
 "Debbie helped the needy by doing volunteer work."
- 팀은 노래를 부름으로써 기분 전환을 했습니다. (부르 + ㅁ으로써 => 부름으로써)
Timeun noraereul bureumeurosseo gibun jeonhwaneul haesseumnida.
 "Tim refreshed himself by singing (a song)."
- 데비는 가끔 케이크를 먹음으로써 기분 전환을 합니다. (먹 + 음으로써 => 먹음으로써)
Debineun gakkeum keikeureul meogeumeurosseo gibun jeonhwaneul hamnida.
 "Debbie sometimes makes herself feel better by eating a cake."
- 팀은 피로를 풀음으로써 다시 일에 집중할 수 있게 되었습니다. (풀 + 음으로써 => 풀음으로써)
Timeun piroreul pureumeurosseo dasi ire jipjjunghal su ikke doe-eotsseumnida.
 "After recovering from fatigue, Tim was able to concentrate on his work again."

Examples from This Dialogue

1. 네가 노래를 부름으로써 고은이를 도와줘...
Nega noraereul bureumeurosseo Goeunireul dowajwo...
 "Why don't you divert her by singing a song for her...?"
2. 뭐!? 내가 노래를 부름으로써!?
Mwo!? Naega noraereul bureumeurosseo!?
 "What? By singing a song for her?"
3. 진실 게임을 함으로써 피곤함을 풀 수 있을 거야!
Jinsil geimeul hameurosseo pigonhameul pul su isseul kkeoya!
 "Her tiredness can be relieved by playing Truth or Lie!"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

* 진실 게임 (*jinsil geim*) "Truth or Lie (Dare)"

진실 게임 (*jinsil geim*) "Truth or Dare (Lie)" is a game in which participants **speak the truth or the fact** in response to someone's question.

Let's break the word down...

진실 (*jinsil*) is a noun that means **"the fact," "the truth," or "honesty."**

게임 (*geim*) is a noun that means **"a game" or "a bet."**

Therefore, 진실 "the truth" + 게임 "a game" becomes **진실 게임 (*jinsil geim*) "Truth or Lie"** by combining both words.

For Example:

1. 팀과 데비는 진실 게임을 합니다.
Timgwa debineun jinsil geimeul hamnida.
 "Tim and Debbie play Truth or Dare."
2. '진실 게임'은 진실을 말하는 게임입니다.
'Jinsil geim'eun jinsireul malhaneun geim-imnida.
 "'Truth or Dare' is a game in which all the participants tell the truth."

LESSON NOTES

Lower Intermediate S2 #25

Fond Memories of a Korean Road Trip

CONTENTS

- 2 Korean Hangul
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 6 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 7 Grammar
- 11 Cultural Insight

25

KOREAN HANGUL

1. 고은: 철수야, 너는 이번 여행에서 뭐 할 때가 가장 기억에 남아?
2. 철수: '바이킹'타고 죽을 뻔했을 때가 생각이 나네. 고은이 너는?
3. 고은: 난 '춘천 닭갈비'를 먹을 때. 수진이 넌?
4. 수진: 난 '찜질방'에서 놀 때. 팀 너는?
5. 팀: 난 '삼계탕'을 먹을 때하고 '삼.육.구' 게임을 할 때.
6. 철수: 와, 우리 그러고 보니, 일박 이틀(일박 이일) 동안 정말 많이 먹고 잘 놀았구나!!! 고맙다 친구들아.
7. 수진: 고맙긴. 철수 네 덕분에 정말 재미있었지! 주사 두 방 맞고. 하하하.
8. 고은: 야, 다 왔다! 자, 이제 우리 여기서 헤어지자!
9. 팀: 그래, 우리 다음에도 또 뭉치는 거지?
10. 철수: 물론이지! 하하하

ROMANIZATION

1. GOEUN: cheolsuya, neoneun ibeon yeohaengeseo mwo hal ttaega gajang gieoge nama?
2. CHEOLSU: 'baiking'tago o jugeul ppeonhaesseul ttaega saenggagi nane. goeuni neoneun?
3. GOEUN: nan 'chuncheon dakgalbi'reul meogeul ttae. sujini neon?

CONT'D OVER

4. SUJIN: nan 'jjimjilbang'eseo nol ttae. tim neoneun?
5. TIM: nan 'samgyetang'eul meogeul ttaehago 'sam.yuk.gu' geimeul hal ttae.
6. CHEOLSU: wa, uri geureogo boni, ilbak giteul dongan jeongmal mani meokgo jal loratguna!!! gomapda chingudeura.
7. SUJIN: gomapgin. cheolsu ne deokbune jeongmal jaemiiseotji! jusa du bang matgo. hahaha.
8. GOEUN: ya, da watda! ja, ije uri yeogiseo heejija!
9. TIM: geurae, uri daeumedo tto mungchineun geoji?
10. CHEOLSU: mulloniji! hahaha

ENGLISH

1. GOEUN: Cheolsu, what is one of your most memorable moments from this trip?
2. CHEOLSU: Almost dying from riding the "Viking" is still maybe the best memory that I have. What about you, Goeun?
3. GOEUN: My best memory is eating the spicy, marinated Chuncheon chicken. What about you, Sujin?
4. SUJIN: My best memory is when we played in the steam room. How about you, Tim?

CONT'D OVER

5. TIM: When we ate ginseng chicken soup and played "three, six, nine" afterward.
6. CHEOLSU: Wow, now come to think of it, we really ate a lot of food and had a blast as well for two days and one night! Thank you, guys.
7. SUJIN: You're welcome. It was really interesting all thanks to you, Cheolsu! You got TWO shots, ha ha.
8. GOEUN: Yeah, here we are near home! Well, now we go our separate ways!
9. TIM: Okay, we'll get together some other time, right?
10. CHEOLSU: Of course! Ha ha ha.

VOCABULARY

Hangul	Romanization	English	Class
기억에 남다	gieoge namda	to ring in one's heart	phrase
물론	mullon	of course, as a matter of fact	expression
뭉치다	mung-chi-da	to get together	verb
헤어지다	heejida	to break up, to part ways	verb
이제	ije	from now on, now	adverb
덕분에	deokbune	thanks to	phrase
일박 이일 (일박 이틀)	ilbak i-il (ilbak-i-teul)	one night and two days	phrase

생각이 나다	saenggak-i nada	to remember, to come to mind	phrase
이번	ibeon	this time	noun
다음에	daeume	next time	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

기억에 남았어요. gieoge namasseoyo. "It rang in my heart."	물론이죠. mullonijyo. "Of course."
다음 주 금요일에 뭉치는 거 어때? Da-eum ju geum-yo-il-e mung-chi-neun geo eottae? "Why don't we get together next Friday?"	우리 오늘 헤어졌어. uri oneul heeojyeosseo. "We broke up today."
이제 돌아가자. ije doragaja. "Let's go back now."	덕분에 즐거웠어요. deokbun-e jeulgeowosseoyo. "Thanks to you, I had a great time."
일박 이일로 여행을 떠날 거예요. il-bak i-iro yeohaeng-eul tteonal geo-yeyo. "We are going to take a trip for one night and two days."	아직도 선명하게 생각이 나요. ajikdo seonmyeong-hage saenggak-i nayo. "I still remember it very vividly."
이번에는 제가 살게요. ibeoneneun jega salkkeyo. I will get it this time (bill).	너 또 늦었어! 이번에는 어떤 변명할거야? neo tto neu-jyeot-sseo! i-byeon-e-neun eo-tteon byeon-myeong-hal-geo-ya? "You are late again! What's your excuse this time?"

다음에 또 봐요.
daeume tto bwayo.

"See you again next time."

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

1. 일박 이틀(이일) 동안 (*ilbak iteul(i-il) dong-an*) "for one night and two days"

Let's break the phrase down:

일박 (*il-bak*) is "an overnight stay."

이틀 (or 이일) (*iteul* (or *i-il*)) means "two days."

동안 (*dongan*) is a preposition meaning "for" or "during."

Therefore, all together, 일박 이틀(이일) 동안 means "for one night and two days."

For Example:

- 우리는 일박 이틀 동안 여행을 무사히 마쳤습니다.
Wurineun ilbak iteul dongan yeohaengeul musahi machyeosseumnida.
"We have safely completed a trip of one night and two days."
- 팀은 이틀 동안 아무것도 안 먹고 있습니다.
Timeun iteul dongan amugeotto an meokko itsseumnida.
"Tim has not tasted anything for two days."

2. 헤어지다 (*he-eojida*) "to part (from)"

We often use this word, 헤어지다 (*he-eojida*), when we are parting from someone.

For Example:

- 팀은 친구들과 헤어졌다.
Timeun chingudeulgwa he-eojyeotta.
"Tim parted from his friends."
- 팀과 데비는 재회를 기하고 헤어졌습니다.
Timgwa debineun jaehoereul gihago he-eojyeotsseumnida.
"Tim and Debbie parted after promising to meet again."

3. 뭉치다 (*mungchida*) "to get together"

We often use this word, 뭉치다 (*mungchida*), to suggest "to get together" sometime in the near future. You can use this verb only between friends.

For Example:

1. 우리 다음에 또 뭉치는 거지?
Wuri da-eume tto mungchineun geoji?
"Are we getting together some other time again, right?"
2. 우리 다음에는 데비 집에서 뭉치자!
Wuri da-eumeneun debi jibeseo mungchija!
"Let's get together at Debbie's place next time!"

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is Verb Stem + ㄹ/을 때, Meaning "When...", or "While..."

난 '삼계탕'을 먹을 때하고 '삼.육.구' 게임을 할 때...

Nan 'samgyetang'eul meogeul ttaehago 'sam.yuk.gu' geimeul hal ttae...

"(When we were) eating the ginseng chicken soup and playing "three.six.nine" afterward..."

We use **Verb Stem + ㄹ/을 때 (*r/eul ttae*)** when we want to express the time or duration when an action was or is ongoing. We can directly translate this expression, Verb Stem + ㄹ/을 때, as "when" or "while" in English.

There are three ways of dealing with this expression.

They are:

- #1 - Noun + 때 "in the time period of [NOUN]"
- #2 - Past tense + 을 때 "when [the subject] DID something [in the past]"
- #3 - Present tense + ㄹ/을 때 "when [the subject] DOES something"

Let's take a look at them one by one.

1. NOUN + 때 (*ttae*) "When (or While) [NOUN]"

We can translate this expression, NOUN + 때, as [in the time period of [NOUN]].

For Example:

Noun	Noun + 때	Becomes...	"English"
1. 학생 (<i>hak-saeng</i>) "a student"	학생 + 때	학생 때	"When I was a student,"
2. 휴가 (<i>hyuga</i>) "vacation," "holidays"	휴가 + 때	휴가 때	"(While) on (your) vacation,"

For Example:

1. 팀은 학생 때 커피숍에서 일했었습니다.
Timeun haksaeng ttae keopishyobeseo ilhaesseosseumnida.
"Tim worked at the coffee shop when he was a student."
2. 난 이번 휴가 때 한국으로 갈 거야!
Nan ibeon hyuga ttae hangukeuro gal kkeoya!
"I am going to visit Korea on this vacation!"

2. Past Verb Stem + 때 Means When (the Subject) DID Something: 았/었을 때 (*at/eot eul ttae*)

When we use it with the past tense, it indicates the time or duration in the past.

For Example:

Past Tense	Past Verb Stem + 을 때	Becomes...	"English"
1. 먹다 => 먹었다 (<i>meokta</i> => <i>meogeoktta</i>) "to eat" => "ate"	먹었 + 을 때	먹었을 때	"when I ate something,"

2. 놀다 => 놀았다

(nolda => nolatta)

"to play" =>

놀았 + 을 때

놀았을 때

"when I played,"

"played"

For Example:

1. 내가 자장면을 먹었을 때 넌 내 옆에 없었어!

Naega jajangmyeoneul meogeosseul ttae neon nae yope eopseotsseo!

"You were not with me when I ate black bean noodles!"

2. 내가 춘천에서 놀았을 때 너는 서울에 있었어!

Naega ChunCheoneseo noratsseul ttae neoneun Seoule isseosseo!

"You were in the city of Seoul when I had fun in the city of Chuncheon."

3. (Present) Verb Stem + ㄹ/을 때 Means When (the Subject) DOES Something

When we use it with the present tense, it indicates the time or duration when an action is ongoing.

📖 Conjugation Rule

Rule #1: Verb Stem + ㄹ 때 - If there is no 받침 (ending in a vowel) or if the noun ends with a ㄹ 받침

Rule #2: Verb Stem + 을 때 - If there is a 받침 (ending in a consonant) at the end of the noun

Verb (Rule #1)	Verb Stem + ㄹ 때	Becomes...	"English"
1. 타다 (<i>toda</i>) "to ride"/ "to take"	타 + ㄹ 때	탈 때,	"When (I) ride a Viking,"
2. 하다 (<i>hada</i>) "to do"	하 + ㄹ 때	할 때,	"When (I) do my homework,"

Verb (Rule #2)	Verb Stem + 을 때	Becomes...	"English"
3. 먹다 (<i>meoktta</i>) "to eat"/"to have"	먹 + 을 때	먹을 때,	"When (I) eat black bean noodles,"
4. 주사 맞다 (<i>jusa matta</i>) "to have/get an injection"	주사 맞 + 을 때	주사 맞을 때,	"When (I) get an injection,"

For Example:

1. 바이킹을 탈___때 저는 눈을 감아요. (타 + ㄹ 때 => 탈 때)
Vaikingeul tal ttae jeoneun nuneul gamayo.
"I would close my eyes when I ride a Viking."
2. 숙제(를) 할___때 저는 종종 과자를 먹어요. (하 + ㄹ 때 => 할 때)
Sukje(reul) hal ttae jeoneun jongjong gwajareul meogeoyo.
"I often have cookies when I do my homework."
3. 자장면을 먹을___때 젓가락을 사용해야 해요. (먹 + 을 때 => 먹을 때)
Jajangmyeoneul meogeul ttae jeokkarageul sayonghaeya haeyo.
"You should use chopsticks when you eat black bean noodles."
4. 주사를 맞을___때(는) 팔에 힘을 빼야 해요. (맞 + 을 때 => 맞을 때)
Jusareul majeul ttae(neun) pale himeul ppaeya haeyo.
"You should relax your arms when you get an injection."

Examples from This Dialogue

1. 난 '춘천 닭갈비'를 먹을 때.
Nan 'Chuncheon dakgalbi'reul meogeul ttae.
"(When) Eating the spicy, marinated chicken is the best memory."

2. 난 '찜질방'에서 놀 때.
Nan 'Jjimjilbang'eso nol ttae.
 "(When) Playing at the steam room is the best memory."
3. 난 '삼계탕'을 먹을 때하고 '삼.육.구' 게임을 할 때.
Nan 'samgyetang'eul meogeul ttaehago 'sam.yuk.gu' geimeul hal ttae.
 "(When we were) Eating the ginseng chicken soup and playing 'three, six, nine' afterward."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

*** 이번 시즌 "Lower Intermediate Season 2" 에서 등장했던 한국의 음식, 장소, 그리고 단어들**
(i-beon si-zeuneseo deungjanghaeddeon hangukeu eumsik, jangso, geurigo daneodeul)
"Korean food, places, and unique Korean words that have appeared in this Season, Lower Intermediate Season 2"

1. 짜장면 & 짬뽕 (*jjajangmyeon & jjambbong*) "Korean black bean noodles and Korean spicy seafood noodles" - from **Lesson #2**
2. 고속도로 휴게소 (*gosokdoro hyugesoo*) "highway rest stop(s)" - from Lesson #8
3. 남산타워 (or 서울타워) (*namsantawo (seoultawo)*) "Namsan Tower (or Seoul Tower)" - from **Lesson #9**
4. 롯데월드 (*lotdewoldeu*) "Lotte World" - from **Lesson #10**
5. 춘천 (*chuncheon*) "city of Chuncheon" - from **Lesson #12**
6. 여친, 남친, and 절친 (*yeochin, namchin, and jeolchin*) "a girlfriend," "a boyfriend," and "a best friend" - from **Lesson #13**
7. 막국수 (*makguksu*) "Korean buckwheat noodles" - from **Lesson #15**
8. 한라산 (*hallasan*) "Mount Halla" - from **Lesson #16**
9. 찜질방 (*jjimjilbang*) "a dry sauna" - from **Lesson #19**
10. 한국 병원 (*hanguk byeongwon*) "Korean hospitals" - from **Lesson #20**
11. 삼계탕 (*samgyetang*) "ginseng chicken soup" - from **Lesson #21**
12. 삼.육.구 게임 (*sam.yuk.gu geim*) "Three, Six, Nine game" - from **Lesson #22**
13. 진실 게임 (*ginsil geim*) "Truth or Lie game" - from **Lesson #24**

여러분 그동안 즐겁게 "Lower Intermediate Season 2"를 들어주셔서 감사드립니다!



- | | |
|--|---|
| Intro | 13 Are You Too Busy to Eat Korean Food? |
| 1 I Didn't Expect That to Happen in Korea! | 14 It Doesn't Do to be Rude in Korea |
| 2 Being Indecisive in Korea | 15 Your Dream of Eating Korean Food Has Come True at Last |
| 3 A Korean Interruption | 16 You Will be Full After I Give You This Korean Meal |
| 4 Wait For Me in Korea | 17 I Don't Know Whether I'm Coming or Going in Korea |
| 5 You Might Do This in Korea | 18 Don't Stop Learning Korean |
| 6 How to Be a Good Friend in Korea | 19 Can you Take the Heat in Korea? |
| 7 Despite Your Lateness, We Can Still Be Friends in Korea | 20 Braving the Korean Doctor |
| 8 I Don't Mind Where We Go in Korea | 21 Korean Chicken Soup for the Soul... and Body |
| 9 It Would Be Good if We Could Decide Where to Go in Korea | 22 Who's the Designated Driver on this Korean Road Trip? |
| 10 Defying Death at a Korean Amusement Park | 23 Let's Play 3.6.9 Together in Korea! |
| 11 Showing Restraint in Korea | 24 Staying Awake by Playing Korean Games |
| 12 Let's Plan Our Next Move in Korea | 25 Fond Memories of a Korean Road Trip |